

**NASS**

**[NATIONAL & STRATEGIC STUDIES]**

## GREAT ZIMBABWE

- ✓ This was an example of a late Iron Age state.
- ✓ Bantu people who migrated from the Congo basin founded the State.
- ✓ The Bantu people passed through many places and in the 4th century A.D they arrived in Zambia.
- ✓ It is believed that in the 10<sup>th</sup> century, a man called Munembire led them.
- ✓ Those who settled in Masvingo founded the Great Zimbabwe State.
- ✓ The people of Leopard's kopje culture at Mapungubwe built it.
- ✓ At its peak it had a population of about 10 000 people
- ✓ It was one of the biggest and best sites in Africa.

**ECONOMY**, mining, trade tribute payments, craftwork, Tool making, hunting & agriculture. The economy was mainly dependent on agriculture. They grew crops such as millet, rapoko, cowpeas and animals were reared i.e. cattle, sheep and goats. The G.Z. traded with the Swahili & Arabs. They got cloth, necklaces, mirrors, and beer.

**POLITICS**, the king was the head of state. He also had a number of responsibilities e.g. judicial leader, supreme judge, land distributor, military leader and also the religious leader. There was a hierarchy of authority in the state, at the top there was a king, below him there were chiefs and at the bottom there were ordinary people.

The king ruled with the help of a dare. There were doorkeepers on entrances. Communication was through drumbeats. Kingships were inherited from father to son. The king ruled with the help of a council. Walls protected the people from enemies. The king lived at the hilltop so that he could identify enemies. The king's wives and members of the council lived in the great enclosure.

**SOCIAL ORGANIZATION**, the state was led by a man. Polygamy was allowed in the state. Usually the rich married many wives. Lobola had to be paid in many forms for example labor, grain, animals, and tools for example hoes & axes. There was division of labor based on sex. The people of Great Zimbabwe had a number of social customs i.e. rainmaking ceremonies, burial ceremonies, ritual ceremonies & lobola paying.

## DECLINE OF THE STATE

Overpopulation. The land at GZ could no longer support the huge population that had grown. At its height GZ had a population of about 10000 people.

Shortage of resources that is pastures for livestock, salt, animals to hunt were exhausted

Succession disputes. Oral traditions suggest that around 1450 there was a succession dispute in Great Zimbabwe.

One claimant to the throne was Nyatsimba Mutota supported by Chingowo. The other claimant was Torwa supported by Changamire. The Mutota Chingowo faction was defeated and it moved or was driven to the North i.e. Dande - Chidima region

Civil wars

Land lost its fertility due to continuous cultivation, overstocking & overpopulation.

Trade took new routes. There was desire by traders to take or control the Zambezi trade and so GZ was avoided.

Drought. This caused associated problems for example shortage of pastures and overstocking

There were ambitious leaders like Mutota who wanted to form his own state.

**Mutapa**

**Rozvi**

**Ndebele**

**Zulu**

## IDENTIFY IRON AGE SITES IN ZIMBABWE

Great Zimbabwe

Ziwa

Chipadze

Tsindi

Danangombe Dhlodlo -

Khami

Nhunguza

Manyanga - Ntakazikamambo

Nalatale

Ruanga

## IDENTIFY ANY MADZIMBABWE

Ruanga

Chipadze

Ziwa

Nhunguza

Masimbira

Manekweni

## TO WHAT EXTENT DID THE CHANGES AS A RESULT OF IRON CONTRIBUTED TO THE FALL OF THE GREAT ZIMBABWE? [8]

*Admit.* The use of iron contributed to the fall of the Great Zimbabwe.

The continuous cultivation led to loss of soil fertility so people migrated. The population grew as the people were settled permanently. This led to overpopulation of people therefore it resulted in shortage of resources mainly salt. The use of weapons caused conflicts in society.

*However* the use of iron was not the only cause of GZ's decline. Ambitious leaders and drought also caused the decline.

*Analysis.* If iron had not been introduced, then many activities e.g. trade would not have taken place. Also because of iron people became settled. The use of iron weapons encouraged people to fight. Therefore iron contributed to the decline of GZ to a larger extent.

## DESCRIBE THE CHANGES THAT TOOK PLACE IN THE FARMING AND MINING COMMUNITIES OF THE IRON AGE PERIOD HOW FAR DID THE PEOPLE OF ZIMBABWE BENEFIT FROM THESE CHANGES ABOVE?

### ORIGINS OF MUTAPA STATE

The origins of Mutapa state are not clear as some historians argue that the state existed before the fall of Great Zimbabwe state. Others argue that the State was formed or founded after the fall of GZS. However, all believe that the founder of the state was Nyatsimba Mutota. They also agree that the state was an offshoot of the Great Zimbabwe State founded by people migrating into northern Zimbabwe. When Nyatsimba Mutota moved north from GZ he defeated the Tonga & Tavara who gave him praise name Munhumutapa [one who conquers]. Archaeology shows similarities in pottery used by the Mutapa and Great Zimbabwe State. Some stone buildings in the Dande valley have been certainly identified with the Mutapa State.

### MUTAPA EXPANSION

- Politically the Mutapa expanded by conquering other neighboring states for example Nyatsimba Mutota defeated & absorbed the Tonga & Tavara who gave him praise name Munhumutapa [one who conquers]. In the process they absorbed them and took wealth, women & children. The state expanded probably because there were weak states, which surrounded it.

- The presence of a strong army and a strong leader resulted in the stretching of boundaries of the state by conquering other states.
- The need to control trade along the Zambezi valley and Sofala, the need for salt in the Dande area and fertile soils suitable for agriculture around Chidimu resulted in the expansion of the state.
- The state also expanded in terms of boundaries. The Mutapa rule stretched west to Angwa and Manyama rivers, north to the Zambezi, and East to the Musengezi & Mukumbura Rivers. It took Chidima to the east and spread south across the Mazowe River.
- Mutapa State expanded from Dande to Sofala in Mozambique at the India ocean coast. It also expanded to the East of Delagoa Bay and extended also down south to Bocha & Buhera and Westwards. It also went as far as Tete & Sena in Mozambique. Mutapa State also expanded to Namibia's eastern side

## WHAT FACTORS FAVOURED THE RISE OF THE MUTAPA STATE?

The Mutapa State came into life after the fall of GZ state.

An important factor in the rise of the state was the quality of leadership and the ambition that Mutota had.

He was able to easily defeat the Tonga & Tavara because he was a strong leader.

The area in the north had fertile soils

Unlike GZ, the area had plenty of elephants from which they got ivory.

A few people inhabited the area

There were plenty of pastures

There were plenty of salt deposits

The area received plenty of rainfall, at GZ there had been a drought.

## MUTAPA LEADERS

NYATSIMBA MUTOTA [1420-50]  
NYANHEWE MATOPE [1450-80]  
NYAHUMA MUKOMBERO [1490-94]  
CHIKUYO CHISAMARENGU [1494-1530]  
NESHANGWE [1530-1550]  
CHIVERE NYASORO [1550-1560]  
NOGOMO MAPUNZAGUTU [1560-1589]  
GATSI RUSERE [1589-1624]  
NYAMBO KAPARARIDZE  
MAVURA MHANDE [Gatsi's son]  
CHIOKO [up to 1917]

## MUTAPA ECONOMY

- Trade – the Mutapa exchanged goods such as ivory, minerals, and animal skins with the Portuguese so that they obtain spices, cloth, jewellery, beer, mirrors, guns
- Agriculture – Crop growing e.g. millet, sorghum, maize
- Animal Domestication – for example cattle, goats, sheep
- Hunting – they hunted for ivory, meat and animal skins
- Craftwork – it is the making of baskets, weaving & pottery.
- Tribute payments. It was paid as a sign of loyalty to the king.
- Mining. From this they got minerals like iron, gold & silver.

## DESCRIBE THE ECONOMIC AND SOCIAL LIFE OF THE MUTAPA PEOPLE

### ECONOMIC

- Trade – the Mutapa exchanged goods such as ivory, minerals, and animal skins with the Portuguese so that they obtain spices, cloth, jewellery, beer, mirrors, guns
- Agriculture – Crop growing e.g. millet, sorghum, maize
- Animal Domestication – for example cattle, goats, sheep
- Hunting – they hunted for ivory, meat and animal skins
- Craftwork
- Tribute payments
- Gold Mining

## SOCIAL LIFE

They were allowed to marry  
When one decides to marry, lobola was paid or considered  
Polygamy was encouraged  
The ruling family was the most respected  
The king's wives were also respected  
There were social customs for example burials, social classes and division of labour

## RELIGION

They believed in God [Mwari] and also ancestors, the so called vadzimu  
They also believed in the spirit mediums [masvikiro]  
Traditional doctors [n'anga] were very important.  
The people believed in avenging spirits [ngozi] and it had to be compensated [kuripwa]  
In Shona they call it kuripa ngozi  
They believed in life after death  
They were also rain making or calling ceremonies.  
The national spirit was called the Mhondoro

## HOW IMPORTANT WERE POLITICAL ISSUES TO THE PEOPLE OF THE MUTAPA?

### POLITICAL

The king was the head of state  
He had a number of responsibilities  
He ruled with the help of counselors [elders/wise men]  
There was a hierarchy of authority which descent from the king to head of family.  
By the time Nyanhehwe's death the boundaries included Eastern Highlands and part of Mozambique. The boundaries stretched from the Zambezi to Limpopo, Central Mozambique to the fringes of the Kalahari.  
Small chiefdoms were incorporated.  
The state was very large.  
*However it was not only political issues, which were important in the Mutapa, there were economic activities, which brought wealth & stability. It also brought with it peace.*

## FALL OF THE MUTAPA STATE

- Succession disputes – many people were power hungry, it was difficult to identify the most senior person to become the leader.
- Mutapa was too big to control – over extended boundaries. Weak rulers failed to unite the empire.
- Civil wars – the Mutapa were fighting amongst themselves.
- Military weaknesses – that is traditional weapons proved no match to the guns used by the Portuguese.
- Portuguese interference led to the rapid decline of the Mutapa – the Portuguese caused exhaustion of resources. They organized coups and undermined Mutapa's Power by installing their own puppets to the throne. Many people were converted to Christianity
- Weak rulers – for example Gatsi Rusere and Mavura Mhande who was a Portuguese puppet.
- Over ambitious leaders for example Changa & Torwa who rebelled against young, weak and inexperienced Nyahuma Makombero in 1490.

## WHY THE PORTUGUESE PENETRATED INTO THE MUTAPA STATE.

They wanted to witness the source of raw materials  
They wanted land for agriculture  
They wanted to trade  
They wanted to push out the Swahili/Arab from the Mutapa and take over the state.  
They wanted to take political control of the state  
They wanted to spread Christianity.

## PORTUGUESE ACTIVITIES IN THE MUTAPA STATE ECONOMIC

- The Portuguese introduced credit systems in trade whereby Africans got goods on credit. Those who failed to pay were taken as slaves or would lose their property.
- The Portuguese introduced the Prazo system, which meant that land no longer belonged to the Mutapa but to the Portuguese Crown.
- Gained control over trade and minerals.

- Introduced Slave trade and forced labor.
- Depleted metal resources.
- Forced the Mutapas to pay tribute.
- Took control of trade from the Arabs
- Led to decline in crop production by Africans.
- Introduced new crops such as maize, mangoes, bananas.
- Exploited Africans in trade, in that the items they received were of high value as compared to what they offered. For example cloth for gold or ivory.
- Portuguese made mining a daily activity.
- Built trading centers at Sena, Tete and Zumbo along the Zambezi.

### **POLITICAL**

- The Portuguese interfered in the Political affairs of the Mutapa and organized coups for example in 1629 they removed Nyambo Kapararidze for Mavhura Mhande.
- The Portuguese had private armies in the state for example the Chikundas.
- Installed puppets for example Mavura.
- Chiefs lost political power and right to distribute land.
- The Portuguese policies of divide and conquer & divide and rule weakened the Mutapa state militarily.
- Civil wars increased as the Portuguese supported rival claimants to the throne.
- The Portuguese introduced new laws.

### **SOCIAL**

- They introduced Christianity, which undermined the traditional religion. Some Portuguese spread Christianity for example father Goncalo Da Silveira.
- Some Africans adopted Portuguese customs.
- Slavery as an institution was accepted.
- A rich class of African merchant [vashambadzi] emerged.
- Some Africans were detribalized as they became assimilated by the Portuguese.
- Most Africans were forced to speak Portuguese.

### **DESCRIBE THE TRADE BETWEEN THE PORTUGUESE AND THE ZIMBABWEAN SOCIETIES IN THE 16<sup>TH</sup> AND 17<sup>TH</sup> CENTURIES**

The Portuguese started by trading from outside the Mutapa after the discovery of the sea route to India.

Their trading stations included Zanzibar, Pemba, Mombassa, Malindi, and Kilwa. Later the Portuguese decided to join in the state trade between the Mutapa & the Swahili.

The first Portuguese to enter the Mutapa was Antonio Fernandez in 1513, after his visit more Portuguese began pouring into the Mutapa state.

The Portuguese started by a military take over of the Swahili trading stations for example Sofala, Sena & Tete. Later the Portuguese Bazaars.

The Portuguese cheated the Mutapa in trade and gave them less valuable goods for example mirrors & jewellery. On the other hand they took away gold, ivory, animal skins etc.

In the first days the Portuguese paid tax for trade in the Mutapa.

They introduced the credit system where the Mutapa would get goods on credit and pay later. Those who failed to pay, had their property taken or were taken as slaves.

The Portuguese were also involved with the Swahili and this disrupted trade. They were eventually successful in pushing out the Swahili after finding an excuse in the death of father Goncalo da Silveira.

In 1693 the Portuguese were defeated by Changamire Dombo and were pushed out of the State, they were no longer allowed to come into the state. They continued to trade through vashambadzi [African middlemen] they established new trading stations for example Zumbu & Masekesa

### **IDENTIFY 6 TRADING CENTRES ESTABLISHED BY THE PORTUGUESE ON THE MOZAMBIKAN COAST AND IN THE INTERIOR OF THE MUTAPA STATE.**

Zumbo,  
Masekesa,

Zanzibar,  
Pemba,  
Mombassa,  
Malindi,  
Kilwa  
Sena,  
Tete,  
Sofala.

## THE PRAZO SYSTEM

- This was a land holding system, which was introduced in Portugal by Spain
- According to the system, land no longer belonged to the Portuguese but to the Spanish.
- The Portuguese in the Mutapa then introduced the system in the 16<sup>th</sup> century.
- According to the system land no longer belong to the Mutapa but the Portuguese crown
- This meant that the Mutapa were now squatters
- This also means that the Mutapa had to pay tax to the Portuguese king via the captains based on Mozambican Islands.

## EFFECTS OF THE PRAZO SYSTEM

Loss of land by the Mutapa  
Loss of power by the Mutapa kings  
Introduction of slavery  
It also led to the fall of Mutapa  
It caused the exhaustion of resources in the state  
It led to the introduction of new crops e.g. maize also new farming & mining skills.

The owners of the prazos were known as prazeros i.e. they owned mines and farms.  
They made use of slave labor on their farms.

## EFFECTS OF THE PORTUGUESE PRESENCE IN THE MUTAPA STATE

### Negative effects

- They deprived the Mutapa people of their land
- Mutapa lost power
- The Portuguese caused the decline of Mutapa State
- They interfered in the decline of Mutapa State
- Caused exhaustion of resources e.g. minerals
- The Portuguese caused the introduction of slavery
- They also caused cheating in trade
- Decline in production of crops by Africans.
- Civil wars increased as the Portuguese supported rival claimants to the throne.
- 

### Positive effects

- They spread Christianity
- New crops e.g. maize, new farming/mining techniques were introduced
- New and better weapons e.g. the cannon gun were introduced.
- New trade items
- A rich class of African merchants [vashambadzi] emerged.

## ROZVI ORIGINS

The origins of the Rozvi are not clear as historians give many versions.

All historians are in agreement that the founder of the Rozvi was Changamire Dombo who rose to power from 1648 to 1695.

Changamire Dombo took over the North East of the Plateau.

After rebelling against the authority, Changamire Dombo first conquered the *Torwa* in Southwest and the kingdoms of *Manyika* & *Uteve* in the East.

While fighting these people the Rozvi then drove the Portuguese their former settlement at *Masekesa*.

The Portuguese were no longer wanted into the Rozvi state and they traded through *vashambadzi*.

It is believed at the same time as Nyatsimba Mutota moved North from GZ, the *Torwa* also moved westwards

It is believed that the Rozvi State was the former Torwa state that just changed its name.

## EXPANSION OF THE ROZVI STATE

- The state expanded through intermarriage
- The Rozvi were not allowed to marry people of the Moyo totem so when they married the non-Moyos the population of the state expanded.
- The state also expanded through raiding other states. In the process they absorbed the defeated and took wealth, women & children.
- The state also expanded in terms of boundaries, which stretched as far as Limpopo, and close to the Zambezi River into western Zimbabwe where there is Matebeleland to Eastern Zimbabwe close to areas like Masekesa
- The state also expanded in terms of wealth through economic activities like agriculture, trade etc

## ECONOMY OF ROZVI

- The economy of Rozvi was based on **Agriculture**. The South Western Plateau was the cattle-breeding center. Cattle were very important into the state because they were used: As a form of wealth, payment for lobola, meat & milk, leather and other products. Crop growing e.g. millet, sorghum, maize
- **Trade**- the Portuguese brought beads, chinaware, cloth, candles, brandy, mirrors and seashells. The Rozvi were involved in external and internal trade. They still traded with the Portuguese who were not allowed into the State by Changamire Dombo. They used trade stations like Masekesa & Zumbo. They traded through the middlemen [vashambadzi].
- **Hunting**-they were involved in hunting which was a pastime. The Rozvi hunted for ivory that was needed for trade. Hunting provided meat and animal skins used to pay annual tribute to the mambo.
- **Tribute**-the Rozvi paid tribute to the king. Vassal chiefs also paid tribute. Tribute was paid once a year. Items such as gold, grain, ivory, skins of dangerous animals and rare animals were used for tribute payment.
- **Craftwork**-the Rozvi also did craftwork from which they obtained hides, mats, baskets, shields & jewellery. Mining-but this was on a small scale compared to the Mutapa.They mined gold, iron copper. Other mines were exhausted.
- **Raiding**- other states for cattle & grain to increase wealth of the state.

## POLITICS of the State

- The king was the head of the State who had many duties for example distributing land, judge, army commander and religious leader.
- He was a hereditary ruler whose power went from him to his eldest son.
- The state was matrilineal, one in which were only men were leaders.
- There was a hierarchy of authority in the state, which ascended from the family head to the king.
- The king ruled with the help of a council.
- In the state, were also important people for example chiefs & head drummers?
- The king to raid other states used a huge army.
- Whenever the Rozvi raided they brought the booty, which included wives, cattle, grain etc

## RELIGION OF ROZVI

- The king was a religious leader who was believed to have come from God.
- He was installed and also chosen to be a leader with the blessings of ancestors.
- Whenever there was a succession dispute in the state the religious leaders intervened.
- The spirit mediums would nominate a leader after consultation with the ancestors
- Religious ceremonies were used to unite the state for example rain-calling ceremonies and other ceremonies to appease ancestors.

## SOCIAL LIFE

- The Rozvi belonged to the Moyo totem and were not to marry people of the same totem.
- Rozvi men were allowed to marry many wives as polygamists.



- Whenever they married, lobola in form of iron tools or cattle was considered or paid.
- Man only led the society.
- Division of labor was based on sex. Men did hunting; mining, cultivation and women did cooking, craftwork & agriculture.
- Other important people in the state were traditional doctors and n'angas who controlled the social life of the people.
- Related homesteads made up lineages. Lineages competed with each other to control the means of production.
- The poor of the state were given loans under "kuronzera".
- They were many social customs that were respected in the state for example burial practices.

## THE FALL OF THE ROZVI STATE

### Internal factors

- **Succession disputes.** Infighting between the various houses that had claims to the leadership led to the fall of the Rozvi State.
- **Weak leaders** for example Chirisamhuru 2 who was skinned alive by a Ngoni woman called Nyamazana
- **Civil Wars** in the late 18<sup>th</sup> century and early 19<sup>th</sup> century. The Rozvi people were fighting amongst themselves seriously weakening the Rozvi State.
- **Exhaustion of goldfields** and other resources such as ivory meant that no more gold and no more trade which was very important. In the Rozvi gold was used for trade and making jewellery. In addition, there was a decline in foreign trade
- **Serious droughts** of the late 18<sup>th</sup> and early 19<sup>th</sup> century led to the suffering of the people and this greatly contributed to the fall of the Rozvi State.
- **Overall economic decline.** Much chiefdom stopped paying tribute to the Rozvi Mambo. Many Shona chiefdoms that were tributary to the Rozvi became tributary to the Ndebele.
- **Loss of population** due to serious droughts, civil wars and Mfecane [time of suffering] which was a large population movement which began South of the Limpopo.

### External factors

- Foreigners e.g. the Ngoni of Nyamazana raided them. The Rozvi state was raided and attacked by at least six Sotho and Nguni groups, which caused further destruction.
- Many Nguni leaders e.g. Zwangendaba, Sebitwane & Soshangane passed through the Rozvi State, crushing and weakening it in the 1830s.
- Mzilikazi arrived in 1838, completed the conquest and gave the final blow to an already weakened Rozvi Empire.
- Otherwise the state's collapse mainly rested on external factors rather than internal factors.....OR
- Had it not been the coming of the Nguni the state could have gone on for a long period therefore external factors contributed to the fall of the state to a large extent

## IDENTIFY ROZVI CENTERS OF POWER

- Danamombe [Dhlodhlo]
- Khami
- Nalatale
- Butua
- Manyanga {Ntabakazikamambo}

## CAUSES OF MFECANE or CAUSES OF CHANGE IN NGUNILAND

- Land shortage. Nguniland was a very good fertile & peaceful area but changes began to emerge that is shortage of resources for example land to build homes, cultivate crops and adequate grazing pastures for their livestock.
- Population growth. This put pressure on available resources and led to clashes.
- Tshaka's brutality and military tactics also contributed to Mfecane.
- Warfare among African states / chiefdoms in Nguniland
- Dutch and British colonial expansion.

- The presence of ambitious leaders for example Dingiswayo and Tshaka.
- The influence of trade also caused Mfecane, as more and more goods were demanded for example ivory
- Serious droughts. The weather changed between 1760 and 1790 from good rains and harvest to a dreading drought [madlatule], poor rains and harvest resulted in hunger, poverty and clashes began to emerge for few resources left

### EFFECTS OF MFECANE

- Death of many people through wars
- New states were formed e.g. Ndebele state, Gaza state
- Led to the fall of weak states e.g. Rozvi
- It led to the loss of strong leaders from Nguniland
- It led to the spread of Zulu military tactics and culture
- The rise of strong ambitious leaders for example Soshangane, Sebetwane, Mzilikazi, Nyamazana, Nxaba
- The fall of the Zulu State
- Depopulation of Nguniland/Zululand

### ORIGINS OF THE NDEBELE STATE

- The founder of the Ndebele State is Mzilikazi, son of Mashobane, chief of the Khumalo and Nompethu daughter of Zwide who was the Ndwandwe leader.
- Mzilikazi grew up in an environment of fighting and got military training
- He was sent by Tshaka to raid the Basutho group of people but he did not handover all the booty that he collected from the raid.
- He only handed a few cattle and disrespected Tshaka
- Mzilikazi then started preparing for an attack from Tshaka
- Tshaka sent an army and Mzilikazi's group was defeated. Mzilikazi and his supporters regrouped and started a journey, which was designed to establish a new state.

### THE MIGRATION OF MZILIKAZI

- Mzilikazi crossed the Drakensburg Mountains into a journey that would take him 20 years. It began in 1821.
- After fleeing from Tshaka the Khumalo first settled at Ekupumeleni [place of rest] where they attacked the Sotho & Pedi.
- Nguni refugees who were running away from Tshaka also joined them.
- In 1825 a war broke out between the Khumalo and Nxaba. Nxaba was defeated and fled to Malawi. Ekupumeleni was ravaged by drought in 1825 moreover the place was near to Tshaka.
- Because of this the Khumalo moved westwards to the Apies River where they established a center at Mhlalanelela.
- From this center they raided neighbors and even those as far as Limpopo.
- They faced threats from Dingane who still considered Mzilikazi as a runaway.
- In 1828 Griqua under Jan Bloem attacked the Ndebele.
- These Griquas had run away from Cape because the Boers treated them unfairly.
- They lost 3000 cattle but managed to recover them in a counter attack.
- In 1832 Dingane sent his entire force to destroy the Ndebele.
- Because of these attacks Mzilikazi established two new settlements at Mosega & Egabeni along Marico River.
- Here they were attacked by the Boers.
- In the first battle the Ndebele won, taking away 100 horses, 4600 herd of cattle and 50000 sheep and goats.
- The Boers revenged in 1837 and recovered their sheep, cattle and horses.
- They took 6000 herds of cattle
- Continued Boer threats and loss of men, women & children convinced Mzilikazi to move northwards.
- Mzilikazi then divided his people into two groups.
- Gundwane Ndiweni led the other group. His group settled at Ntabazinduna a flat-topped hill near Bulawayo.
- Mzilikazi travelled through lake Ngami and tried to approach the Zambezi but was driven back by tsetse flies, which killed his cattle.
- Mzilikazi arrived in 1840 and regarded the installation of his son during his lifetime as a rebellion, since he arrived after the installation of his son Nkulumane as king.

- Gundwane and others were executed and Nkulumane was driven down the Limpopo.
- Mzilikazi established himself over the local inhabitants who he easily defeated.

### WHY DID MZILIKAZI MIGRATE

- He was an ambitious leader
- He feared Tshaka because he had disobeyed him
- His father was Mashobane and his mother Nompethu, Nompethu was Zwide's daughter, and Mashobane was a close friend of Dingiswayo so he was killed because of their friendship.
- Mzilikazi was taken as a general by Zwide and was allowed to make his own soldiers.
- He had to migrate because of attacks from Tshaka

### SOCIAL SYSTEM OF THE NDEBELE

- In the Ndebele there were 3 social classes, which were Zansi 15%, Enhla 25% & Hole 60%.
- The **Zansi** were the original Khumalo from the Nguniland or Zululand. They occupied top positions in the state and enjoyed many privileges. They made up 15% of the Total population.

Below were the:

- **Enhla** who made up 25% of the total population. These were people absorbed during the Khumalo migration or on their way from Nguniland. The people who constituted the enhla are the Pedi, Tswana, Sotho, and Kora & Mpondo.
- **Hole** were the indigenous people. The Shona made up 60% of the total population. They were the least respected. They provided labour and they paid tribute. Intermarriage between the Hole & Khumalo was not allowed. This was to maintain the purity of the Khumalo.

### ECONOMY OF THE NDEBELE

- **Agriculture** was the basis of the Ndebele economy.

Cattle rearing was a very important activity of the Ndebele. *Importance of cattle:* milk, hides, glue, tribute, lobola payment, as a form or symbol of wealth, symbol of status, loans, rewards for services and loyalty and for religious festivals.

- The Ndebele grew drought stricken crops such as sorghum, millet and rapoko.
- **Trade.** The Ndebele traded with the Shona [internal trade]. The Ndebele didn't ban the trade, which existed between the Shona & the Portuguese. They traded with the Portuguese in which they obtained guns.
- **Craftwork.** They produced shields, spears, and mats and also did some pottery.
- **Hunting.** They got animal skins, meat and ivory for trade. They allowed many European hunters for example in the 1860s.
- **Raiding** also brought wealth into the state. They got animals for example cattle, sheep and goats. They got captives [women and children] and also grain.
- **Tribute payment.** All subjects of the Ndebele for example the Shona, the Tswana, paid tribute.

### POLITICAL ORGANISATION

- The head of the state was the king
- He had a number of responsibilities
  - Raised the amabutho
  - Distributed captured cattle
  - He was a land distributor
  - Religious leader
- The king ruled with the help of counsellors mainly from Zansi.
- There was the umphakati, the senior council members of the royal family.
- He was a dictator and dominated the umphakati.
- The other council was the izikhulu, which consisted of other chiefs and people noted for their wisdom.
- The kinship was inherited from father to the eldest son.
- The political system was centralized than any other state system.

### RELIGION OF THE NDEBELE

- There were many ethnic groups in the Ndebele State for example Mpondo, Tswana, Shona ...
- Because of this there was a variety of religious practices.
- The Nguni groups worshipped the Unkulukulu (the most high God).
- The Sotho's worshipped the Sotho God [Mlimo].

- The Rozvi worshipped the Mhondoro cult.
- The Ndebele carried a number of religious festivals for example the festival of the first fruits.

## HOW IMPORTANT WAS RELIGION IN THE STATE

- The king was the religious leader
- Religion was used to the interests of the state.
- Religion was used to unite people through gatherings such as the Inxwala festivals.
- Only the king could officiate at important religious ceremonies.
- When a king dies, religious ceremonies were conducted.
- Religious leaders installed the new king and a religious ceremony was conducted.
- When succession disputes do occur, religious leaders were consulted.
- In this way the powers of God and the ancestors of the Ndebele could only be reached through the king.
- The political power structure was therefore reinforced with every religious festival.
- The chief's too, officiated at lesser ceremonies.
- In 1859 Mzilikazi took a bold step of allowing missionaries to settle in his new country. He gave the London Missionary Society a piece of land to build a mission station at Inyati one of his chief towns but up until 1868 the missionaries had not made a single convert.
- **However** it was not only religion, which was important. The **Politics, the Economy and Social organization** were also critical to the state.
- The economy or economic activities played crucial roles as it brought stability. It ensured adequate food and wealth. It raised the state status.
- Social issues also helped to unite people.
- Religion was also important in the politics of the state to a small extent in the sense that a leader who controls religion and do not control the economy is a weak leader. Economy of a state determines the state status.

## MISSIONARIES

### AIMS

- To civilize the Africans.
- To spread Christianity
- To spread the 3rs i.e. reading, writing & arithmetic's.
- To abolish evil practices for example the killing of twins, albinos.
- To pave the way for colonization.
- To trade with the Africans.

### EXAMPLES OF MISSIONARY GROUPS

- London Missionary Society
- Berlin Missionary Society
- Paris Evangelical Mission of Lesotho
- Dutch Reformed Church of South Africa
- Methodist Missionary Society
- Anglican Missionary Society
- Roman Catholic Missionary Society

### EXAMPLES OF MISSIONARIES

- Robert Moffat
- John Smith Moffat
- Knight Bruce
- Rev. Thompson
- Bartholomew Kroot
- Francis Collard
- Rev. Sykes
- Charles Helm
- Michael Buys
- Father Lauw

## MISSION STATIONS

Inyati 1859 by the LMS  
Hope Fountain 1870  
Empandeni 1871  
Chishawashe 1891 by the Jesuits  
Morgenster 1891 by the Dutch  
Waddilove 1892 Methodist Wesleyan  
Epworth 1892  
Mount Selinda 1893 by the American Board  
St Augustine's Mission 1894 Anglican Missionaries  
Hartzell 1897 United Methodist Mission  
Driefontein by the Catholics

## PROBLEMS FACED BY MISSIONARIES

They had communication problems because of language barriers.  
Transport problems to move from one place to the next. They were no roads.  
Attacks from Africans  
Conservative [against change] African Religions  
Went into war torn regions and some of them were killed.  
Diseases for example malaria, small pox  
Weather conditions were harsh. Failed to adjust to hot weather  
Food shortages

## DESCRIBE THE MISSIONARY WORK IN ZIMBABWE 1850-1900

Missionary work in Zimbabwe can be traced back as far as the 16<sup>th</sup> century during the time of Father Goncalo da Silveria. In the 19<sup>th</sup> century many missionaries came to Zimbabwe with many aims listed above.

### Work of missionaries

- Missionaries paved way for the colonization of Zimbabwe because they came as torchbearers. They softened the blacks and lessened the shock of confrontations between white and blacks.
- Missionaries introduced Christianity. Examples of the missionaries were Charles Helm and Robert Moffat of the London Missionary Society.
- They opened up mission stations for example Inyati Missions Stations established in 1859 during the time of Mzilikazi.
- Missionaries opened up mission schools e.g. Waddilove, Hartzel, and St Augustines & Mt Selinda. By so doing, they brought formal education, the 3r's i.e. writing reading and arithmetic – they brought new forms of writing and measurements units.
- Missionaries abolished evil practices e.g. the killing of albinos, slavery, killing of the twins etc.
- Missionaries brought new forms of writing and printed the first newspapers.
- They translated the bible into local languages e.g. Shona, Ndebele.
- They introduced new types of building and architecture.
- They set up farms and improved agriculture
- They inoculated cattle for various diseases and also helped to destroy pests.
- In the area of health, missionaries imported drugs that were used to cure diseases like small pox. They eventually set up mission hospitals e.g. Old Mutare
- Missionaries also established trade relations with the Africans – they brought many foreign goods
- Missionaries helped to repair guns
- They wrote letters to the kings, translated for kings and become loyal friends e.g. Charles Helm to Lobengula also advised the king.
- During liberation struggle some missionaries helped the guerillas by giving them medicine, blankets, food, cigarettes e.g. bishop Lamont.
- The missionaries managed to destroy the African culture and moral values.
- Some missionaries supported colonial rule e.g. the Dominican Convent sisters and a catholic priest who accompanied the BSAC.

- Charles Helm signed the Rudd Concession that sold away the country to the whites.
- During the liberation struggle father Traber was deported for supporting blacks

### HOW SUCCESSFUL WERE MISSIONARIES IN ACHIEVING THEIR AIMS

#### Successes

- Managed to convert many Africans into Christians
- Managed to pave way for colonization
- Caused divisions among Africans
- Managed to abolish evil practices
- Managed to bring formal education
- Africans were civilized i.e.. Agriculture was improved new of farming methods.
- New building

#### Failures

- Father Lauw failed to establish a station in Mzila's area as the whole of his group perished with Malaria.
- There was still resistance from African chiefs that is why Chief Mangwende's son Bodgido killed Bernad Mzeki an African priest.
- Missionaries failed to completely destroy African culture and that explains why Mangwende's two sons were antagonistic to Christian views
- The London Missionary Society failed to win a single convert in the Ndebele State. That is why John Moffat saw the Ndebele as a miserable people and thought that it would be a blessing to the world if they were broken up.
- Before colonial rule was established but after the defeat of the Shona and Ndebele, the missionaries were more successful.

### HOW FAR DID THE MISSIONARY WORK CONTRIBUTE TO THE COLONISATION OF ZIMBABWE

#### Side a

- They caused divisions among Africans
- They softened Africans to the extent that they could not resist colonization
- They signed the Rudd Concession by C. Helm, he persuaded Lobengula
- They persuaded Africans to sign treaties e.g. Lobengula

#### Side b

- These were not the only ones
- Lobengula also signed a document, which he did not understand
- Queen Victoria gave Rhodes a colonizing Charter in 1889
- Lobengula restrained the amajaha from punishing whites out
- Lobengula was persuaded to sign the Rudd Concession by his indunas Lotshe & Sikombo
- E.Maund delayed Babjane and Mtshane in stopping the signing of the colonizing charter.

### REASONS FOR COLONISATION OF SOUTHERN AFRICA

The need for raw materials for example cotton, gold, ivory, and animal skins.

Because they had industrialized, they wanted a market for their products.

Some wanted to spread Christianity for example the London Missionary Classes.

To Civilize Africans

They wanted prestige: Britain wanted a Cape to Cairo route & Germany wanted a place in the sun. France wanted to wipe her defeat in the Franco-Prussian War 1870-1

They wanted to invest in Africa

Technological advance

Improvement in transport

They now had guns, "we have the maxim guns and they have not".

They had medicines/ drugs and so they could fight diseases for example malaria, small pox, and sleeping sickness

Some wanted land to farm – for agricultural use.

They wanted to dispose excess population

## HOW FAR DID AFRICANS BENEFIT FROM COLONISATION

### Positive benefits

Monetarization of the economy  
Infrastructure development i.e. roads, railway line etc  
Brought formal education  
Brought Christianity  
Evil practices such as the killing of twins and albinos came to an end.

### Negative benefits

Colonization brought about loss of independence to the blacks.  
The blacks were not free to do their own things.  
They lost their land and were crowded into reserves, like Gwaai & Shangani (1894).  
The Africans got the marginal, dry poor land.  
Overstocking and overpopulation existed in reserves.  
Thousands of acres of land were unused in European areas  
The Europeans got the fertile lands  
The Moodie brothers for example pegged 108000 acres of land.  
African leaders finally lost their power as White officials were positioned in different administrative divisions to directly rule over the blacks.  
It opened up the door for all oppressive practices  
Laws, which were oppressive and not equal to everyone, especially the blacks were passed  
"Robbering" of African Land was legalized

### Weigh & conclude

## WHY WAS ZIMBABWE COLONIZED?

- Need for raw materials for example ivory, cotton, and gold, land animal hides
- Second rand, Mineral wealth
- To encircle Transvaal
- To check Portuguese expansion in Southern Africa.
- Land
- Prestige
- Zimbabwe had good climatic conditions – hospitable.

## STEPS TOWARDS COLONIZATION

### The Berlin Conference

- In 1844-5 The Berlin Conference chaired by Otto Von Bismarck who was considered an honest broker.
- At the conference they agreed that they were going to divide Africa into twenty spheres of influence.
- European countries had to use diplomacy to win these spheres of influence.
- They had to sign treaties with African chiefs
- Major rivers like Niger, Nile were going to be used as boundaries.
- Any territory that had been won had to be advertised.
- Any territory that had been won by a European country had to be effectively occupied.

## TERMS OF THE BERLIN CONFERENCE

- It set rules by which the partition was to be carried out
- It allowed claims of the various countries that had been colonized
- They agreed that any country that was extending its rule should inform the other countries of what it was doing.  
The Congo was king Leopold II private property.
- Established rules giving, traders of all nations equal rights to trade in some parts of Africa.

### Effects

- The conference speeded up the process of colonization.
- European countries hurriedly made claims & the establishment of responsible governments.
- Only a small part of Africa was occupied during the conference, but 20 years later all of Africa was colonized except Liberia & Ethiopia.
- In 1885 Botswana was colonized by Britain.
- Botswana was then going to be used as a springboard for the occupation of Zimbabwe.

### THE GROBLER TREATY 1887

- Paul Kruger of the Transvaal government sent Piet Grobler to come and sign a Treaty with Lobengula king of the Ndebele.
- Lobengula then signed the Treaty in July 1887.

### TERMS OF THE TREATY

- The two agreed that there would be perpetual peace between South Africa, Transvaal & Matabeleland.
- The Treaty acknowledged Lobengula as an independent ally.
- Bound Lobengula to assist the Boers with troops if asked for help.
- Made Lobengula accept a resident from the Boer Republic.
- Allowed anyone with a pass from the Boer president to hunt or mine in the state without any hindrances.
- Lobengula agreed to catch and send back all criminals who fled from South African Republics.
- Lobengula was not allowed to administer justice to the Boer.

### THE MOFFAT TREATY - FEBRUARY 1888

- When Cecil John Rhodes learnt of the Grobler Treaty he felt jealous.
- He decided to send his own man Jon Smith Moffat to Lobengula so that he would have the Grobler Treaty cancelled.
- John Smith Moffat was the son of Robert Moffat who had signed the Moffat Treaty with Mzilikazi in 1836.
- John Smith Moffat was chosen to go to Lobengula because they knew each other since the days of their fathers.
- The two immediately became friends and signed the Moffat Treaty.
- Lobengula even agreed to become a friend of the Queen and not to sign any agreements without consulting the British High Commissioner.
- Little did Lobengula know that John Smith Moffat considered the Ndebele, as a miserable people and that it would be a blessing if they were broken up?
- He also described the Ndebele as "blood thirsty savages"

### RUDD CONCESSION - 30 OCTOBER 1888

In order to consolidate his position, Rhodes carefully chose Charles Rudd, Rochford Maguire and Francis Thompson.

### TERMS OF THE RUDD CONCESSION

#### Promises of the whites to Lobengula

- 100 pounds per month.
- 100 000 rounds of ammunition
- 1000 rifles
- A gunboat to be placed on the Zambezi.
- No more than ten men will enter the state at one time
  - The three arrived in September 1888 & waited for 5 weeks before they could talk to Lobengula.
  - During this time Lobengula is said to have restrained the *amajahas* who wanted to use force to drive out the whites.
  - Through persuasion Lobengula finally agreed to sign the Concession on 30 October 1888.
  - Charles Helm who was a friend, an agent of imperialism & a missionary persuaded Lobengula.



## Promises of Lobengula

- Lobengula gave the whites complete and exclusive mineral and metal rights in his kingdom, together with the right to do whatever they deemed necessary to procure the minerals.
- Lobengula placed an “X” on the document.
- Little did he know that he was selling his political power?

## THE COLONISING CHARTER

- Rhodes then took the document of the Rudd Concession to the Queen so that he could be granted the colonizing charter.
- He convinced the Queen that he was going to colonize and develop Zimbabwe on behalf of Britain.
- He promised the queen that he was not going to burden the British taxpayer since he was going to use his own money.
- With this argument he was granted the charter to colonize not Zimbabwe only but even the rest of Southern Africa.
- Meanwhile Lobengula realized that he had been cheated.
- He then sent Babjane & Mtshane to go to the Queen and complain.
- E. Maund accompanied them.
- The two messengers of Lobengula were deliberately delayed.
- They arrived when the Royal Charter had already been granted.
- As soon as Rhodes got the Charter he rushed to South Africa to form the BSAC.
- This was the company that was going to fund the colonization of Zimbabwe.
- Rhodes then formed the Pioneer Column.

## THE PIONEER COLUMN

- More than 2000 people applied and only 200 were selected. There were about 500 policemen to accompany the Pioneers

## IDENTIFY 6 PROFESSIONS OF THE PIONEER COLUMN

Soldiers  
Policemen  
Farmers  
Nurses  
Carpenters  
Miners  
Missionaries  
Doctors  
Bakers  
Printers  
Builders  
Engineers

## DESCRIBE THE ROUTE OF THE PIONEER COLUMN & ORGANISATION

- By June 1890, 600-700 adventurers had started to gather at Macloustle River in Botswana in preparation for the march.
- To reduce conflicts with the Ndebele, the column marched straight into Mashonaland.
- Selous [a hunter & a scout] led the way and teams of men followed him cutting trees and removing stones.
- They had about 117 wagons
- Pennefather led the police force
- The Dominican sisters accompanied them.
- Frank Johnson who was promised 15000 pounds led the whole colonizing party.
- His second in command was Heany & Borrow
- Khama of the Ngwato provided pioneers with more than 1000 auxiliaries.
- In June they crossed the Macloustle River and in July they crossed the Shashe River.
- They traveled 12miles per day.

- By August they were now in Zimbabwe
- The pioneers passed through Fort Tuli, Fort Victoria, Fort Charter and then Fort Salisbury.
- They arrived at Fort Salisbury on 12 September 1890.
- They then raised the union jack.
- The chameleon had darted its tongue and the bigger part of the fly disappeared.
- Meanwhile other pioneer group had diverted at Fort Charter and headed to Manicaland where they signed the Mutasa Treaty.
- It is said that Mutasa had to receive 100pounds per year from the BSAC.
- Nobody knows whether in truth Mutasa signed the Treaty, as no missionaries were present.

### WHO WAS TO BLAME FOR THE COLONISATION OF ZIMBABWE?

#### TO WHAT EXTENT WAS LOBENGULA TO BLAME FOR THE COLONISATION?

##### Side a

- Lobengula signed a treaty, which he did not understand.
- He restrained his amajahas who wanted to use force, to push the whites out, who he over trusted.
- He signed many Treaties and ended up confused.

##### Side b

- He was not the only one, Lotshe and Sikombo were bribed.
- Missionaries were to blame because they made Lobengula believe that the whites were honest.
- Queen Victoria should also be blamed for the charter.
- E. Maund delayed Babjane and Mtshane in stopping the signing of the colonizing charter

##### Weigh

- Lobengula was to blame to a large extent because he signed treaties which he did not understand etc.

### [ANGLO-NDEBELE WAR]

#### WAR OF DISPOSSESSION 1893-4

##### CAUSES

- **Long-term** As soon as the white settlers arrived in Mashonaland, the first thing they did was to peg the land. In the Ndebele tradition, the king's duty was to distribute land. This pegging of the land came as a challenge to Lobengula who viewed this as a seizure of his land distribution powers.
- **The boundary issue** The Ndebele were used to raiding the Shona for grain, wives or cattle. When the whites came they drew a boundary line between Mashonaland and Matebeleland in order to restrict these Ndebele raids. The issue of the boundary line was a foreign concept to the Ndebele, as it never existed. Furthermore the boundary line kept on shifting. The whites saw Mashonaland as a cheap source of labourforce.
- **The use of Shona Policemen** In the Ndebele social system, the Shona were in the Hole [the lowest social group]. The white settlers decided to make the Shona their policemen and they could arrest the Ndebele. The Ndebele saw this as very humiliating to be arrested by the people they regarded as inferior. This was a recipe for war.
- **Failure to find the second rand in Mashonaland** The whites were bored because they failed to find second rand in Mashonaland. Their attention now shifted to Matebeleland where there was a rumor that Lobengula's capital was built on top of gold. The Ndebele state therefore had to be destroyed to get this gold. This made war inevitable.
- **Failure of Christian missionaries to win converts in Matebeleland**
- The whites failed to win a single convert in the Ndebele state. They therefore wanted to destroy the Ndebele at all cost. This made war unpreventable.
  - ❑ **Victoria incidents**
- **The case of Chivi & Nemaikonde** The two chiefs stopped paying tribute because they saw the whites as saviors from the Ndebele. Lobengula could not tolerate this so he killed them. This was unacceptable to the whites who did not want their cheap source of labor disturbed.

- **The case of Gomara** In May 1893, some Shona under headman Gomara between Fort Tuli & Fort Victoria stole or cut & carried away 500yards of telegraph wire to make snares. He was asked to pay a fine or hand over the culprits. He chose to pay a fine using cattle, which later on proved to be Lobengula's.
- **The case of Bere** While this was going on reports reached Bulawayo that another headman Bere 95miles west of Masvingo had stolen cattle from Lobengula. Lobengula decided to teach the Shona a lesson, so he dispatched an army of 3000men to the Victoria district under Manyawo assisted by a young commander Mgandani. Mgandani & Manyawo demanded refugees for punishment & Lendy refused to comply. The Ndebele were instructed to move out of Mashonaland and they complied.
- A follow up by Lendy resulted in the death of Mgandani & this made war inevitable.

### RESULTS OF THE WAR

- The Ndebele were defeated
- It marked to the end of the Ndebele state.
- Loss of their king Lobengula in 1894 and they were not allowed to choose another king.
- The defeat marked the end of Ndebele Raids into Mashonaland
- Native Reserves were introduced for example Gwaai & Shangani.
- Hut tax was introduced 1894
- Loss of cattle
- Before the war Lobengula had 250000 cattle but after the war he had 40930.
- Forced labor was introduced

### HOW SUCCESSFUL WAS THE NDEBELE UPRISING OF 1893-4?

#### Successes

- The Ndebele managed to kill some whites for example Allan Wilson.
- The Ndebele killed the Shonas

#### Failures

- They were defeated
- They lost their king and were not allowed to choose one
- They were forced to work for whites
- They were forced into native reserves and to pay hut tax
- They lost their cattle

#### Weigh and conclude

- To sum up they were successful to a small extent.

TO WHAT EXTENT DID RHODES KEEP THE TERMS OF THE RUDD CONCESSION BY 1893?

### HOW SUCCESSFUL WERE THE WHITES IN CRUSHING THE REBELLION?

#### Successes

- *To a large extent they were successful.*
- They defeated the Ndebele
- The Ndebele lost their king and were not allowed to choose one
- The Ndebele were forced to work for whites
- The Ndebele were forced into native reserves and to pay hut tax
- The Ndebele lost their cattle

#### Failures

- The Ndebele managed to kill some whites for example Allan Wilson.

#### Weigh and conclude

- *To sum up they were successful to a large extent.*

### FIRST CHIMURENGA 1896-7 [UMVUKELA 1]

#### CAUSES

#### WHY DID THE SHONA GO TO WAR IN 1896?

- The Shona were forced to work for the whites with low wages
- They were forced to pay Hut Tax [1894].

- The Shona lost their fertile lands to the whites.
- Abuse of women by the police by the police boys – abuse of power.
- The Jameson Raid - Jameson went to raid Transvaal of Boers. Jameson was captured by the Boers under Paul Kruger and his group was defeated. News reached Zimbabwe that Jameson had been defeated inspired or acted as a motivation to fight the whites.
- The Shona lost many cattle through payment of taxes
- **1895 natural disasters**, which were **Rinderpest, which** affected cattle, **drought**, which resulted in starvation, and **Locusts**, which ate crops. Africans interpreted these natural disasters as having been caused by the coming of the whites. This means that the whites had to be pushed out of the country so that the natural disasters which never been seen before would come to an end. Moreover the blacks were denied to eat the meat of their dead animals some of which were shot at random by the whites.
- Banning of trade between the Shona and the Portuguese
- Goods brought by the BSAC were expensive.

### WHY DID THE NDEBELE GO TO WAR IN 1896?

- Loss of land
- Formation of native reserves for example Gwai & Shangani
- Payment of hut tax
- Loss of cattle
- Forced labor
- Use of Shona policemen
- **1895 natural disasters**, which were **Rinderpest, which** affected cattle, **drought**, which resulted in starvation, and **Locusts**, which ate crops. Africans interpreted these natural disasters as having been caused by the coming of the whites. This means that the whites had to be pushed out of the country so that the natural disasters which never been seen before would come to an end. Moreover the blacks were denied to eat the meat of their dead animals some of which were shot at random by the whites.
- The abuse of power by the police boys

### TO WHAT EXTENT WERE THE NATURAL DISASTERS RESPONSIBLE FOR THE OUTBREAK OF WAR IN MASHONALAND & MATEBELELAND IN 1896?

- *To a small extent the natural disasters were responsible for the outbreak of the first chimurenga.*
- **1895 natural disasters**, which were **Rinderpest, which** affected cattle, **drought**, which resulted in starvation, and **Locusts**, which ate crops. Africans interpreted these natural disasters as having been caused by the coming of the whites. This means that the whites had to be pushed out of the country so that the natural disasters which never been seen before would come to an end. Moreover the blacks were denied to eat the meat of their dead animals some of which were shot at random by the whites
- *However, there were other factors which were responsible for the outbreak of the first chimurenga and these were:*
  - **Shona grievances.** The Shona were forced to work for the whites with low wages
  - They were forced to pay Hut Tax [1894].
  - The Shona lost their fertile lands to the whites.
  - Abuse of women by the police by the police boys – abuse of power.
  - Banning of trade between the Shona and the Portuguese
  - Goods brought by the BSAC were expensive.
  - The Jameson Raid - Jameson went to raid Transvaal of Boers. The Boers under Paul Kruger captured Jameson and his group was defeated. News reached Zimbabwe that Jameson had been defeated inspired or acted as a motivation to fight the whites.
  - The Shona lost many cattle through payment of taxes

- **Ndebele grievances.** The abuse of power by the police boys
- Loss of land
- Formation of native reserves for example Gwai & Shangani
- Payment of hut tax
- Loss of cattle
- Forced labor
- Use of Shona policemen
- **The Jameson Raid** – Jameson went to raid Transvaal of Boers. Jameson was captured by the Boers under Paul Kruger and his group was defeated. News reached Zimbabwe that Jameson had been defeated inspired or acted as a motivation to fight the whites.

### TO WHAT EXTENT WERE THE NDEBELE SUCCESSFUL?

#### Successes

- They killed most white
- They killed most Shonas
- The uprising united all Ndebele regiments

#### Failures

- Introduction of hut tax.
- Introduction of forced labor
- Abuse of power by police boys

#### Weigh and conclude

- To a small extent

### WHY WERE BLACKS DEFEATED?

#### Side a

- The Ndebele were not united – organized [leaderless]
- Not trained
- They were again coming from a drought
- They had poor weapons
- They had poor communication
- They had poor transport
- They had no support

#### Side b

- The whites had:
- Enough weapons for example maxim guns, machine guns
- Mobile transport for example horses
- Foreign support from South Africa.
- Enough communication
- Were organized
- Were trained

#### Weigh & conclude

If the guns had been given to each black soldier the war would not have EVEN lasted a week. Therefore this means that the major reason the blacks lost was the poor weapons they used so they lost to a large extent.

### RESULTS OF THE FIRST CHIMURENGA

- The blacks were defeated
- Native reserves were extended to Mashonaland
- The blacks lost their power completely – loss of independence.
- Loss of life
- Loss of cattle especially after failure to pay taxes.
- Loss of land

Destruction of centralized Ndebele State

The defeat ushered in a very exploitative administrative machinery, which was to last for 90 years.

More ruthless and oppressive Laws were passed

The war led to the death of Nehanda & Kaguvi.

The blacks lost fertile land

### **THE LAND APPORTIONMENT ACT - 1931**

- Land was divided into two i.e. blacks & whites.
- Part of the white land was kept for their unborn children.
- The country had 96 million acres.
- The whites were given 49 149 174 and yet they were only 50 000.
- The blacks were allocated 21 127 040 and yet they were 1 081 000.
- This means that the whites got more than half of the land in Zimbabwe.
- The other areas were reserved for forest & wildlife.

### **EFFECTS OF THE LAND APPORTIONMENT ACT**

- The act caused overcrowding in the native reserves.
- It caused shortage of land to the Africans. The Africans were given 6 years to move from European areas.
- African chiefs who used to distribute land lost their power to do so
- The act caused rural to urban migration. This also helped to create cheap labor force for the whites in the towns.
- The Act caused mass nationalism. The second chimurenga was fought mainly because of the land issue.
- The act caused many other problems such as:
  - Soil erosion
  - Loss of soil fertility
  - Low yields
  - Overstocking
  - Overgrazing
  - Easy spread of diseases because of overstocking

### **WHAT STEPS OR MEASURES WHICH WERE TAKEN BY THE WHITES OR SETTLERS TO EXPLOIT AFRICAN LABOUR IN COLONIAL ZIMBABWE BETWEEN 1931 AND 1953**

Introduction of many taxes for example Wives Tax, Dog Tax, Hut Tax.

They introduced the Land Apportionment Act (1931); alongside they introduced the native reserves.

They introduced the Land Tenure Act

Eviction of blacks from areas that were occupied by whites.

They were not allowed to sell maize to the GMB and their beef to the CSC and so they remained poor.

They were denied an opportunity to get loans.

The whites confiscated stray cattle, goats and sheep

The whites set up the Native Labor Recruitment Bureau [NLRB], which recruited people from countries, like Zimbabwe, Malawi, and Zambia.

Introduction of forced labor

They introduced the compound system to save on accommodation costs

They introduced passes to control the movement of blacks; women and children were not allowed in towns

In 1934 the government introduced the Industrial Conciliation Act, which divided jobs for whites, and for blacks that is white collar and blue-collar jobs.

In 1953 the government passed the Land Husbandry Act, which worsened the eviction of the blacks in rural areas.

### **HOW FAR WERE THESE MEASURES SUCCESSFUL IN CONTROLLING THE AFRICANS**

#### **Successes**

Native reserves

Taxes

Confiscation of cattle

Compound system

### **Failures**

They got educated.

### **URBANISATION**

#### **DESCRIBE THE EFFECTS OF THE DEVELOPMENT OF TOWNS ON WORKERS IN ZIMBABWE**

It led to, rural to urban migration.

It led to exploitation of the workers

Low wages

It led to family breakdowns as women and children were not allowed in towns.

There was overcrowding of male workers

Development of infrastructure

Transport network

It led to introduction of more Acts for example Industrial Conciliation Act 1934

It caused social evils for example homosexuality.

It led high crime rate.

It also brought together people from different places for example Zimbabwe, Zambia, and Malawi so that they shared political experiences and became conscious of exploitation. It short led to Mass Nationalism.

Agriculture was promoted because there was a market in towns

Development of a cash economy.

#### **EFFECTS OF MINING ACTIVITIES IN ZIMBABWE**

Exploitation of workers

Family life breakdowns

Development of towns for example Arcturus, Hwange & Kwekwe.

Overcrowding in compounds

Rural to Mining centers migration

Caused cultural erosion

High crime rate.

Caused social evils for example homosexuality and promotion of prostitution.

Brought people of different places together

#### **ECONOMIC EFFECTS**

Agriculture was promoted

Infrastructure was introduced

Improvement in transport and communication

It promoted a cash economy

It promoted a trade economy

#### **WHY DID BLACKS SUDDENLY BECAME AWARE OF EXPLOITATION**

It took blacks a very long time to realize that they were being exploited.

They had mixed with people from different countries for example South Africa.

More Acts of exploitation were passed for example The Land Apportionment Act, The Industrial Conciliation Act.

Many schools had been opened in the 1890s

#### **HOW WAS AFRICAN DISCONTENT EXPRESSED**

Africans formed welfare organizations, which were a vehicle for the articulation of their grievances.

In 1923 Martha Ngano and Abraham Twala formed the Rhodesia Bantu Voters Association.

In 1934 Aaron Jacha formed the ANC [African National Congress].

In 1927 Robert Sambo [a Malawian was sent by Clements Kadalie from SA to form an Industrial & Commercial Workers Union [ICU]. He wanted a branch. Robert Sambo was arrested and deported.

In the 1950s Benjamin Burombo formed the African Workers Voice Association.

Africans were involved in *faction fights* for example the 1929 Bulawayo knob kerrie war.

Formation of independent African churches. Again independent African Churches were a vehicle for airing grievances.

Examples of Independent African Churches that were formed are the Watchtower and the Johane Masowe.

Desertion from work. Many discontented workers left their work places without notice. Others even migrated to South Africa where conditions were better.

Passive resistance. Not obeying instructions. Workers faked illness

Forged contracts.

Strikes for example 1927 The Shamva Mine Strike. In 1948 Bulawayo Municipal Workers strike and Railway workers strike.

Boycotts for example the 1956 Boycott of buses organized by City Youth League.

Some workers broke machines as an expression of discontent.

They worked less hard

### EXPLOITATION OF WORKERS IN ZIMBABWE

Low wages

Worked for long hours

They were overcrowded

Worked with dangerous machines without adequate protection

Worked in dim areas

They were not allowed to form Trade unions

They were not allowed to strike

They were not given medical care

They had poor accommodation

### Why were the workers exploited?

### CAUSES OF THE SECOND CHIMURENGA [1966]

Poor health

Poor education

Loss of cattle

Exploitation by whites

Loss of land

No right to vote

Repressive laws erg land apportionment act

Heavy taxation

### IDENTIFY 6 ZANLA GUERILLAS WHO HEADED FOR CHIKOMBA

- Simon Chimbodza
- David Guzuzu
- Christopher Chatambudza
- Godwin Manyerere
- Nathan Charumuka
- Ephraim Shenjere



## COURSE

After realizing that peaceful methods had failed, both ZANU and ZAPU advocated the use of arms against the settler government

This was now the only means of getting majority rule.

Young men were sent out of the country to receive military training in countries like Tanzania and even overseas.

William Ndangana was one of those sent outside Africa to receive military training.

Zanu guerrillas who were called the crocodile commandos carried out the first assault or attack on settlers against the Oberholzer family.

Ndangana in Chimanimani district led these guerillas in 1964.

However, most historians do not regard this isolated event as marking the beginning of the armed struggle.

Instead, the battle of Chinhoyi is generally regarded by historians as marking the beginning of the armed struggle on April 28 1966.

ZANLA soldiers who came from Zambia started the second Chimurenga and they divided in three groups of seven and one group headed for Chikomba.

They were detected and intercepted by the Rhodesian forces while they were in Chinhoyi and the battle that ensued lasted for several hours.

The Guerillas were unfortunately defeated but this was followed by the Hwange battle in 1967 by ZIPRA fighters.

### **In 1967**

There was an alliance between ANC & ZIPRA forces. They agreed to operate in areas around Hwange, Binga, and Nkayi. Though they had inferior weapons they gave a good account of themselves in battle.

### **In 1970**

The Mozambican connection. Samora Machel opened up the Eastern border to ZIPRA forces.

### **In 1971**

Muzorewa formed UANC in order to unite ZANU & ZAPU. Shelton Siwela formed FLORIZI [Front for the Liberation of Zimbabwe]. He also wanted to unite ZANU & ZAPU but by 1974 FLORIZI was no more.

### **In 1972**

- Herbert Chitepo formed The Joint Military Command [JMC]. The aim was to unite ZANU & ZAPU. Solomon Mujuru or Rex Nhongo led an attack on Alterna farm in Centenary.
- The British government designed the Pearce Proposals.
  - A steady progress towards majority rule.
  - Progress towards ending racial discrimination.
  - An improvement in the status of Africans. Any basis for independence was supposed to be accepted by both whites and Africans. Despite the fact that Ian Smith used propaganda for blacks to say yes the verdict of the Africans was an unmistakable NO.

The Africans rejected the proposals in the presence of Lord Pearce who had been sent to make a test of acceptability

### **In 1974**

A number of conferences were called in order to solve the Zimbabwe Crisis.

In 1974 the Lusaka Conference was held but did not achieve anything.

Kenneth Kaunda of Zambia and John Voster the prime minister of RSA called for the Victoria Falls Conference.

The nationalists were also invited but the talks broke up.

### **In 1975**

- Herbert Chitepo was assassinated in a car bomb blast.
- Edison Sithole a nationalist disappeared.
- Mozambique gained independence and this served as a motivation to the Zimbabweans.

### **In 1976**

- There was the Geneva Conference.
- The nationalists were invited to Geneva, Switzerland.

- But they could not go as a divided group of ZAPU & ZANU
- ZAPU & ZANU then came under the umbrella name called Patriotic Front [PF] so that they would speak with one voice.
- Nyadzonja, a refugee camp was attacked killing more than a thousand refugees.

### In 1977

- The Rhodesian forces bombed yet another refugee camp, Chimoio killing a thousand soldiers.
- Jason Ziyapapa Moyo was killed through a parcel bomb.

### In 1978

- Alfred Nikita Mangena was killed by a land mine.
- **The Internal Settlement.**
- The war had intensified by 1978 and Ian Smith was now afraid of losing.
- He therefore turned to weak-minded guys for an internal arrangement.
- These were Abel Muzorewa, Jeremiah Chirau, and Ndabaningi Sithole for an Internal Arrangement.
  - *They agreed that elections would be held and one of them would become a prime minister.*
  - *A new government would be set up [the Zimbabwe-Rhodesia government].*
  - *A new constitution would be drafted.*
  - *There would be 100 seats, 72 for blacks and 28 for the whites, the whites would have the right to veto decisions made by blacks.*
  - *They agreed that there was going to be a cease-fire.*
  - *They also agreed that the army, police, civil service, judiciary and finance would remain in the hands of Smith when a black premier came to power.*
- This meant that the black prime minister would be a puppet.
- The Internal Settlement was considered by other Guerrillas like Mugabe as a betrayal of the liberation war that is why the guerillas did not listen to the instruction to lay down their weapons.

### In 1979

- Muzorewa was elected Prime Minister of Zimbabwe-Rhodesia.
  - WHY DID THE ZIMBABWE-RHODESIA GOVERNMENT AGREE TO TAKE PART IN THE LANCASTER HOUSE CONFERENCE?
- The Commonwealth Conference was held.
- It was agreed that a new conference had to be convened at Lancaster.

### Lancaster House Conference [10 Sept – 21 Dec 1979]

- The British Premier Margaret Thatcher invited those who attended the conference.
- This included the Rhodesia Front delegation, their puppets and the nationalists.
- The conference almost broke up because of the land question.
  - *It was agreed that there would be 100 seats to contest and 20 reserved for the ruling party [Rhodesian Front].*
  - *A new constitution was drafted*
  - *It was agreed that land would be transferred from the whites to blacks after 10 years on a willing buyer, willing seller basis.*
  - *It was also agreed that there was going to be a ceasefire and guerillas would go into 16 assembly points.*
  - *Elections would be held in February 1980.*
  - *Lord Carrington chaired the conference.*
  - *The agreement was signed on 21 Dec 1979.*
- The nationalist delegation then came back home via Mozambique.
- Tongogara died.
- He attended the conference in London, died in a car accident on his way to Zimbabwe.

## In 1980

- February elections were held.
- Zanu PF 57, Zapu 20, Zupo 0, RF 20, Uanc 3.

## POST INDEPENDENCE ZIMBABWE

### PROBLEMS

- Inflation
- Land shortage
- Brain drain
- Shortage of foreign currency
- Unemployment
- Droughts
- Poor transport and communications.
- Poor health and medical facilities
- Poor education
- Political instability – civil war [Gukurahundi] – RENAMO – MNR
- War debts
- Corruption and nepotism

### OUTLINE THE SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC CHANGES THAT WERE INTRODUCED BY THE GOVERNMENT FROM 1980 TO 1990.

### HOW SUCCESSFUL WAS THE GOVERNMENT IN IMPLEMENTING THESE CHANGES DURING THIS PERIOD?

Over-riding concern & guiding principle was to redress the imbalance and injustice of colonial error, which was grossly unfair to the blacks.

### SOCIAL CHANGES

- **Education** aim was education for all, hence establishment of free primary schooling.
- Massive expansion in education facilities & heavy subsidies for secondary & tertiary education.
- More support for adults & none formal education, promotion of cultural & support activities.
- **Health** for all by the year 2000, hence free health care for people earning a wage of less than 150 dollars. There was a vigorous campaign against the six killer diseases. Primary health care was emphasized. Imported drugs and doctors.
- **Legal rights** removal of oppressive laws, discriminatory legal instruments.

### ECONOMIC CHANGES

- Nationalization of major means of production was aimed.
- 5-year plans promulgated.
- Minimum wage set down by government.
- Workers committees encouraged regulating conditions of service between employee's management & employers.
- Price controls
- **Resettlement**
- Government bought farms from white farmers and resettled some landless peasants who were assisted with seeds, fertilizer, equipment & extension services. The land issue was the main issue, which led to the liberation struggle.
- **Indegenisation programme** The government made attempts to indigenise the economy by giving financial support to black business entrepreneurs.
- Blacks were also appointed to top management positions in both the private & public sectors.
- **Foreign exchange** government bought financial, technical and material support overseas to boost economy & human resources for example ZIMCORD
- **The government introduced and encouraged cooperatives**
- **Government adopted a policy of reconciliation**

### FUNCTIONS OF PARLIAMENT

- Law making
- Oversight
- Representation
- Forum for debate

## 1. **LAW MAKING**

Law making is considered the main function of Parliament. The Legislative role is performed through passing of Bills brought before both houses. Every proposal of a Law passes through the following stages:

### **The First Reading**

The Minister makes a formal introduction by reading the long title. No debate takes place at this stage. The Bill is referred to the Parliamentary Legal Committee to determine whether if passed, the Bill is not ultra vires provisions of the Constitution particularly “the Bill of Rights.” A report is compiled by the Committee indicating their opinion. The report can be “adverse” or “non adverse”. An adverse report implies that if enacted the Bill would be in contravention of the Constitution and the Bill of Rights and “non adverse is the opposite.

### **Second Reading**

After the report, the Minister will explain the principles of the Bill and Members of Parliament debate on these Principles of the Bill.

### **The Committee Stage**

The next stage is the committee of the whole House where the House becomes a Committee to consider the Bill clause by clause. The guiding principle is to make such corrections in the Bill that are likely to make it more acceptable. It is at this stage that amendments may be proposed.

### **The Report Stage**

This is the formal presentation of the Bill to the Presiding Officer by the Chairman of the Committee. It also signifies that the House has passed the Bill with or without amendments.

### **The Third reading**

This is the last stage of the Bill in the House. Members may debate but do not go back on the salient issues that would have been passed. With the concurrence of the majority members in the House present, it is read the third time. Once the Bill is passed, it has to be certified by the respective Presiding Officer and goes to the next House for the same consideration beginning on the Second Reading stage. Bills can be introduced from either House, except the Money Bill, which is introduced in The House of Assembly but must undergo the same process in both Houses. The Bills are subject to assent by The Head of State in accordance with section 51 of the Constitution.

## 2. **OVERSIGHT**

The Constitution gives Parliament powers to authorize collection and the use of public funds. It also monitors the use of all public funds. Parliament therefore makes input into the Government projects and plans by monitoring and approving the National Budget. The issues of holding Government to account are at the centre of every workable democracy. The oversight role is meant to protect public funds from abuse.

## 3. **REPRESENTATION**

The Constitution also provides for the composition of Parliament. Parliament plays a major representational role arising from the fact that the majority of Members of Parliament are representatives of their Constituencies; directly elected by the people to articulate issues affecting the people they represent. Members of Parliament play this representative role at Constituency level as well as in the House.

## 4. **Forum for debate**

The Parliament is a forum for debate, which offers a unique opportunity for Members of Parliament to debate various issues as they affect the people. The Members of the Executive (Cabinet Ministers) are compelled to respond to motions raised by Members of Parliament that fall within their respective Portfolios. The Executive also has an opportunity to bring in policy issues for debate by the Members of Parliament.

## 5. **COMMITTEE SYSTEM**

Among other topics for discussions is the Committee system. A **Committee** is a group of members appointed by a House of Parliament to perform specific function, which the House has entrusted to it and report back to the Houses of Parliament on the matter, referred to it. There are various Committees, which are appointed at Parliament, and they include Standing and Sessional.

Standing Committees are established by the Constitution and the Standing Orders to perform specific functions during the life of Parliament.

- Sessional Committees are those elected by the House or appointed sessionally to perform specific functions. Currently Members are selected from both Houses to sit in the Committees.

Linked to Committees, presentations are given on the Role of Chairpersons of Committees. These co-ordinate the work of Committees and are appointed according to Standing Rules. Ad hoc Committees do select their own Chairpersons.

## **The Law in Zimbabwe**

## Introduction

Zimbabwe has a hybrid, or plural, legal system in the sense that the law currently in force was adopted from foreign jurisdictions and imposed into the country by settlers during the colonial era. Zimbabwe's law after several years of independence still exposes residual traits of the process of transplantation of historical disempowerment and colonial takeover.

Zimbabwe's Legal system consists of the Common law (non statutory or unwritten Anglo Roman Dutch Law) Legislation Case Law (Precedent) and Customary Law. With the exception of Criminal Law, which has recently been reformed and codified, Zimbabwe's law is not codified. The Constitution of Zimbabwe is the Supreme Law of the country and it is the parent act of any other Legislation.

## Historical Overview

The colonial and legal history of Zimbabwe, although unique and independent, is interconnected and interrelated to the history of South Africa's legal developments and colonial developments.

Prior to the arrival of the first British settlers in 1890, the area now known as Zimbabwe was occupied exclusively by the Shona and Ndebele peoples whose chiefs exercised Sovereign powers over them. The Shona people occupied the northern part of the country known as Mashonaland, while the Ndebele people occupied the southern part known as Matebeleland. Lobengula, a Ndebele chief, was the most powerful chief at the time of British occupation. The law in force before British occupation was the traditional or customary law of the tribes living in Zimbabwe at that time. The traditional laws were written and were not uniform throughout the country. Chiefs and their kraal heads administered the law with the chiefs being the judges who had the final say in the settlement of disputes. Chiefs have the power to issue royal decrees and these would become law. Traditional laws were enforced by the king or chiefs warriors, or indunas.

29 October 1889 marked the commencement of formal colonial takeover for Zimbabwe. A company known as the British South Africa Company (BSAC) was given a Charter on 29 October 1889 by the British government. The company was the brainchild of Cecil John Rhodes, a British businessman and politician. The colony of Zimbabwe was renamed Rhodesia, after Cecil Rhodes. The charter was a semi-permanent instrument of government until such time as nay settlers could take over the administration of the colony. According to the charter, the British South Africa Company was to administer the colony for at least twenty-five years before the contract was tampered with.

In itself the charter was the first legal document which outlined how Rhodesia was to be governed and administered. It also defined legislative and judicial issues. Article 10 of the Charter decreed thus:

*"the company shall to the best of its ability preserve peace and order in such manners as it shall consider necessary and may with that object make ordinances to be approved by [the British] Secretary of State, mat establish and maintain a force of Police".*

It is thus patently clear from the provisions of Article 10, that the company had now been vested with legislative, administrative and judicial powers and this was the beginning of formal law and its imposition upon a sovereign African Natives.

On the 12th of September 1890, acting on the strength of the Charter, a group of British Settlers arrived at what is now Harare in Mashonaland and hoisted the Union Jack (British flag), a sign of effective occupation. The place was then named Fort Salisbury. A town was created and a Police Force set up. The occupation was secured through dishonest and fraudulent means, given that the black natives were oppressed to British occupation of their territory. On 9 May 1891, the British government brought into being the "South Africa British Protectorate. The idea was to secure the territory from occupation by the South African Republic. However, the company remained in control of the territory.

Given the deceitful and fraudulent means of securing the territory used by Rhodes and his company, tension began to mount between Lobengula and the company. A war broke out in 1893 in which the natives, poorly armed, were defeated. This war was to be known as the "Anglo-Matebeleland war of dispossession".

In 1894, a High court was set up, from which appeals would proceed to the Cape Supreme Court. It is thus common knowledge that the laws administered in the colony of Rhodesia were of foreign origin - mainly British (English Law) and Roman - Dutch Law.

A landmark occurrence took place in on 20 October 1898. The South Rhodesia Order in Council was enacted. It provided for the appointment of an Administrator and a Legislative Council. The Legislative Council had the power to enact laws for the "peace" order and good government of Southern Rhodesia vested in the British Crown and not in the Company. All cases tried in the courts then bore the name of the Gown or the Rex. In October 1923, Southern Rhodesia was formally transformed into a British Colony by the Southern Rhodesia (Annexation) Order in Council of 30 July 1923. This influenced the law to be administered in that it led to the adoption of English legal principles in certain instances.

A Constitution then came into being in 1923. The Constitution established a legislative assembly consisting of thirty elected representatives of electoral districts. It also provided for the election of a Speaker and a Deputy speaker of the Assembly. Such a development marked the commencement of formal parliament a model which Zimbabwe still follows

today. The 1923 Constitution was later revised in 1961; the 1961 constitution conferred more powers of self government on the territory of Southern Rhodesia, because the territory was still a British Protectorate. It also took into account the views of the African nationalists who sought to advance the political rights and interests of Africans.

On the 11th of November 1965, Ian Smith declared a Unilateral Declaration of Independence (UDI), which sought to free the territory from the direct British control and dominion and establish a system of total self-governance. The Queen dismissed Ian Smith and his Ministers for insubordination and declared the declaration illegal, and urged all citizens, the Judiciary, the armed services the police and the public service to carry on with their normal tasks.

In 1969 a new Republican Constitution was adopted. It introduced a Non-Executive Presidency, a bicameral legislature, consisting of a house of Assembly and a Senate. The Senate was the upper house, constituting of twenty-three Senators - ten were Europeans, a further ten were African Chiefs and the final three were persons appointed by the President. The Senate was abolished later in independent Zimbabwe in 1987 and later recently re-introduced in September 2005. This serves to highlight how the law in Zimbabwe has been etched and shaped by the country's Colonial history.

The House of Assembly of 1969 consisted of sixty-six members. Fifty were Europeans, the other sixteen were Africans. This reservation of seats for Europeans who were the minority was to say the least oppressive and it gave rise to the Revolutionary war for independence.

As a result of the continued Political impasse, numerous efforts were made to solve the political crisis. Africans continued waging a war in demand for majority rule and total independence. In 1978 the Regime partially relented and entered talks with African national parties. A new Constitution was agreed on (the 1979 Constitution Elections were held and the U.A.N.C won - Bishop Abel Muzorewa became Prime Minister). Southern Rhodesia for that brief period came to be known as Zimbabwe Rhodesia. Political turmoil continued embattled and this gave rise to the Lancaster House Constitutional Conference in 1979, which sought majority rule for Africans and a total grant of Independence to Africans. Soon after the Constitutional Conference, an election was held in 1980 in which Robert Mugabe's ZANU PF won. On 18 April 1980 Prince Charles formally conferred independence upon Zimbabwe; the new constitution then came into effect on the same day.

The Lancaster House Constitution of 1979 is still the Supreme Law of Zimbabwe today, twenty six years after independence, itself being the parent Act to numerous colonial era Legislation. It is thus clear that Zimbabwe's laws are the pre-historic remnants of the colonial era.

### **Sources of Zimbabwean Law**

With the exception of Criminal Law, Zimbabwe's law is mainly uncodified. There is no one single source of law in Zimbabwe, the law is derived from various sources and has various origins. The Criminal Law of Zimbabwe was recently codified and the Criminal Law [Codification and Reform] Act came into effect on the 1st of July 2006. Even though the criminal law has recently been codified it is still scattered and can be found in other statutes apart from the code. As it is, the code is still an experiment and its constitutionality is yet to be tested.

The following are sources of Zimbabwean law:

- Legislation
- Precedent / Case law / Court Decisions
- Customary Law
- Common Law
- Authoritative texts

### ***The Legislature (Bicameral System)***

Legislation refers to the law validly enacted by the legislative authority of Zimbabwe and assented to by the President of Zimbabwe. In Zimbabwe the legislative authority of Zimbabwe vests in the President and parliament of Zimbabwe which is the Primary Legislation states as follows:

#### ***32 Legislative Authority***

- 1. The Legislative authority of Zimbabwe shall vest in the Legislative which shall consist of the President and Parliament.***
- 2. The provisions of subsection (1) shall not be construed as preventing the legislature from conferring legislative functions on any person or authority.***

The Legislature of Zimbabwe can confer powers on any authority to create binding laws. Currently the Legislature of Zimbabwe is a bicameral system consisting of a Lower House (Parliament) and an upper House (Senate). Legislation brought through parliament has to be scrutinized by the Senate before it goes for assent to the executive President. The senate was recently ushered in through Constitutional Amendment Number 17 of 2005. It appears that currently the purpose is to slow down undesirable proposed legislation or to frustrate it if it comes from members of the opposition. At the same time it expedites legislation brought in by members of the ruling party.

The Senate had been abolished by the ruling ZANU PF party in 1987 on the pretext that it was expensive and that it slowed down the legislative process. Surprisingly it was reintroduced in 2005.

The method of passing legislation is entrenched in Section 511 of the Constitution. All legislation in Zimbabwe is styled Acts of Parliament or Statutes. Other authorities such as the President, acting unilaterally, and Ministries can pass legislation known as Statutory Instruments, or Subsidiary Legislation. Subsidiary or Subordinate Legislation consists of the following:

- Regulations made by a Minister for purposes specified in the Enabling Act of Parliament.
- Bye-Laws created by specified local authorities such as Urban or Rural Councils, acting under powers given to them by the relevant Acts of Parliament.
- Proclamations issued by the President for purposes such as dissolving Parliament.
- Rules of the superior Courts to facilitate procedure and their operations.
- Regulations made by the President under the Presidential Powers Temporary Measures Act.

### ***Case Law / Precedent***

Precedent refers to past decisions of the superior courts. Precedents establish the legal position of cases tried in the courts and establish the reasoning for decisions made by the judges in each particular case. Conversely, precedents therefore guide the courts in making future decisions in similar cases brought before them. Zimbabwe relied on precedents of South African origin or those of any jurisdiction in which English law and Roman-Dutch law is applied and the precedents of Rhodesia.

The maxim *Stare Decisi at non queta movere* best sums up the use of case law in Zimbabwe. The maxim means to stand by old decisions and not disturb settled points. Supreme Court decisions in Zimbabwe are binding on all interior courts. High court ruling also binds the lower courts such as the Magistrates courts.

The advantage of Precedents is that they ensure informality and consistency in the application of the law and they maintain certainty and equality of the law in similar circumstances.

### ***Customary Law***

The customary law of Zimbabwe is generally unwritten. Customary law refers to the fixed customs and practices of the tribes of Zimbabwe which were in practice since time immemorial. The customs must be certain, reasonable and must have attained the recognition of formal law. For example the criminalization of incest, in the sexual offences Act and the Criminal Law (Codification and Reform) Act is the recognition of customary law which prohibits incest or sexual relationship with certain degrees of blood affinity.

The constitution entrenches the recognition of African Customary Law. Section 89 of the Constitution of Zimbabwe in imposing the law to be administered, sets up African customary law as part of the law to be administered. Other Legislation, such as the:

- ☐ **Customary Marriages Act**
- ☐ **Administration of Deceased Estates Act.**
- ☐ **Customary Law and Local Courts Act.**

The acts also establish the application of Customary Law in certain respect.

The Customary Law of Zimbabwe is limited in scope in its application.<sup>1</sup> It has no criminal Jurisdiction whatsoever and it governs some areas of Marriage, Inheritance and Guardianship only.

### ***Common Law***

Common law of Zimbabwe refers to the unwritten law or non- statutory law. Common law excludes the African customary Law. The common law of Zimbabwe is primarily the Roman-Dutch Law as applied at the Cape of Good Hope on the 10th of June 1891 as per the provisions of Section 89 of the Constitution of Zimbabwe. The Common Law was transplanted from the Cape and imposed to Zimbabwe. However, the common law at the Cape in 1891 had been heavily influenced by English Law, hence the common law of Zimbabwe must be said to be Anglo-Roman-Dutch Law.

A recent development in Zimbabwe ousts the application of Common Law. The recent Codification of Zimbabwe's Criminal Law through the Criminal Law (Codification and Reform) Act jeopardizes the application of Common Criminal law Section 3 of the Act states unequivocally that Roman-Dutch Criminal Law no longer to apply.

### ***Authoritative Texts***

One cannot safely assert that authoritative text from acclaimed legal authors form part of Zimbabwe's law. However textbooks on law have persuasive authority upon which reliance can be had in making judicial decisions. The few authoritative legal authors in Zimbabwe rely on old Roman Dutch writers. They mainly write commentaries and guides to the law of Zimbabwe. Professor Geoff Feltoe has several Guides to the Laws of Zimbabwe which are widely used and referred to in litigation. His comments and assertions form persuasive grounds upon which cases can be decided.

## ***Constitution of Zimbabwe***

The constitution of Zimbabwe is the Supreme law of the land and any other law which is inconsistent with it is deemed void to the extent of that inconsistency. Therefore Zimbabwe has Constitutional Supremacy instead of parliamentary Supremacy.

The current constitution of Zimbabwe is the result of a settlement agreement done at Lancaster House in England in the year 1979. It sets out the State Structure, the Bill of Rights the Judiciary the Legislature and other administrative organs such as the public service commission. Currently there is an ongoing struggle being waged by Zimbabwean citizens who are agitating and pressing for a series of seventeen amendments, all of which cannot be said to be in the interest of Zimbabweans, but instead in the interest of the current ruling party.

The constitution is the parent Act of every other Legislation. Therefore all Acts of parliament subordinate to it must be *intra vires* the constitution or within the confines of constitutionality.

At this point, a chapter by chapter analysis of the constitution is prescribed.

## **Understanding of the structure, hierarchy and composition of the Courts**

### **SUPREME COURT**

- ✓ A **supreme court** (also called a **court of last resort, instance, or judgment**; or a **high** or **highest court**) is in some jurisdictions the highest judicial body within that jurisdiction's court system, whose rulings are not subject to further review by another court. The designations for such courts differ among jurisdictions. Courts of last resort typically function primarily as appellate courts, hearing appeals from the lower trial courts or intermediate-level appellate courts. Many countries in fact have multiple "supreme courts," with each being the court of last resort for a particular geographical region or on a particular area of law.
- ✓ It is the superior court of record and final court of appeal.
- ✓ It consists of the chief justice who is the head of the judiciary and judges of the Supreme Court.
- ✓ It is not a court of first instance, except in constitutional matters.
- ✓ Also known as the court of appeal.
- ✓ It is a court of appeal from other courts unless the case is a constitutional one.
- ✓ The court has unlimited jurisdiction in both criminal and civil cases.
- ✓ There shall be no appeal from any judgement or order of the Supreme Court.
- ✓ This is the highest court in the country.
- ✓ Other courts are bound by the decision of the Supreme Court.

### **HIGH COURT**

- ✓ Presided over by judges who are appointed according to the constitution of Zimbabwe.
- ✓ The high court has full unlimited jurisdiction in both civil and criminal cases.
- ✓ The court is also a court of appeal from the magistrate court.
- ✓ It has jurisdiction and authority to review all proceedings and decisions of all inferior or courts below it.
- ✓ Appeal from the high court lie with the Supreme Court.
- ✓ This court can pass death penalty or life imprisonment.

### **MAGISTRATES COURT e.g.** regional, provincial, senior & ordinary magistrates.

- ✓ Presided over by a magistrate.
- ✓ Magistrates are appointed by the Public Service Commission
- ✓ All magistrates' courts have no jurisdiction to try criminal cases involving the following; treason, murder or any offence where the person shall be sentenced to death if convicted.
- ✓ They cannot dissolve civil marriages.
- ✓ It can impose corporal punishment on minors. The strokes shall not exceed six.
- ✓ Regional magistrates has special jurisdiction as to punishment for rape, public violence, arson, malicious injury to property or attempts to commit these offences.

### **PRIMARY COURTS e.g.** community court.

- ✓ Simple courts which are not very formal.
- ✓ Proceedings are not in written form.
- ✓ Legal practitioners cannot represent clients in these courts.
- ✓ The courts apply customary law only.
- ✓ They do not have jurisdiction in criminal cases.
- ✓ They cannot dissolve civil law marriages.
- ✓ Presided over by a presiding officer appointed by the minister.

### **SPECIALIST COURTS** labour court, administrative court and small claims court.



Variable	CRIMINAL	CIVIL
<b>1. Definition</b>	Composed of rules formed/organized by the state which prohibit certain acts on pain of punishment.	Concerns private affairs as opposed to state concerns
<b>2. Initiators</b>	The state initiates the case.	The plaintiff starts the case
<b>3. Summons</b>	The member of the police issues it.	Issued by the messenger of court
<b>4. Costs</b>	Costs are met by the state	Costs are met by the individual
<b>5. Judgement</b>	Upon conviction, the offender may be subjected to a fine, imprisonment, whipping, and in extreme cases death penalties. Offender will be liable to a fine payable to the state and the injured ends up in no financial gain.	The basic idea behind a civil action is to compensate the individual who has been wronged or to declare rights and obligations.
<b>6. standard of proof</b>	The onus of proving the crime rest on the state and the standard required is proof beyond reasonable doubt.	Rest upon a balance of probabilities.
<b>7. Prosecution</b>	<p>The decision to prosecute a crime lies with the state more particularly with the state more particularly with the A.G. certain requirements must be met before a private prosecution is initiated.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A certificate (nolle prosequi) declining to prosecute must be obtained from the A.G's Office.</li> <li>• The person seeking the action must show that s/he has a direct interest in the matter. The harm caused amounting to a crime must affect him/her directly.</li> </ul>	The plaintiff is the person bringing the action. The plaintiff has a discretion to bring action to court or to waiver his/her rights.
<b>8. Pleadings</b>	A docket is opened – to plead guilty/ not guilty.	Only statements of claims are used by the plaintiff and the defendant.
<b>9. Parties involved</b>	Defendant Vs Complainant	Plaintiff, Aggrieved, Wronged, Prejudiced Vs Defendant.
<b>10. Offence</b>	The act prohibited must have happened. There cannot be a crime unless the prohibited act has happened.e.g.Murder, somebody must have been killed.	An action may arise even before the wrong has been done.e.g. one can seek an interdict that the other party be prevented from doing something.NB: the innocent party has a duty to minimize his loss.
<b>11. Intention</b>	The wrong must have had intention to commit the offence.e.g.murder; there must be intention to kill.	An action arises even if the wrongdoer had no intention to prejudice or injure another.
<b>12. Unlawful acts</b>	The act complained of must be unlawful.	There is no need to establish that the act is unlawful.
<b>13. Aim</b>	The major aim is to rehabilitate the offender. He is punished for his conduct. It also aims at deterring the offender and other like-minded persons.	The aim is to compensate the innocent party for wrong done or to declare rights and obligations.

## THE AFRICAN UNION

The advent of the African Union (AU) can be described as an event of great magnitude in the institutional evolution of the continent. On 9.9.1999, the Heads of State and Government of the Organisation of African Unity issued a Declaration (the Sirte Declaration) calling for the establishment of an African Union, with a view, inter alia, to accelerating the process of integration in the continent to enable it play its rightful role in the global economy while addressing multifaceted social, economic and political problems compounded as they are by certain negative aspects of globalisation.

The main objectives of the OAU were, inter alia, to rid the continent of the remaining vestiges of colonization and apartheid; to promote unity and solidarity among African States; to coordinate and intensify cooperation for development; to safeguard the sovereignty and territorial integrity of Member States and to promote international cooperation within the framework of the United Nations.

Indeed, as a continental organization the OAU provided an effective forum that enabled all Member States to adopt coordinated positions on matters of common concern to the continent in international fora and defend the interests of Africa effectively.

Through the OAU Coordinating Committee for the Liberation of Africa, the Continent worked and spoke as one with undivided determination in forging an international consensus in support of the liberation struggle and the fight against apartheid.

### **Quest for Unity**

African countries, in their quest for unity, economic and social development under the banner of the OAU, have taken various initiatives and made substantial progress in many areas which paved the way for the establishment of the AU. Noteworthy among these are:

- Lagos Plan of Action (LPA) and the Final Act of Lagos (1980); incorporating programmes and strategies for self reliant development and cooperation among African countries.
- The African Charter on Human and People's Rights (Nairobi 1981) and the Grand Bay Declaration and Plan of Action on Human rights: two instruments adopted by the OAU to promote Human and People's Rights in the Continent. The Human Rights Charter led to the establishment of the African Human Rights Commission located in Banjul, The Gambia.
- Africa's Priority Programme for Economic recovery (APPER) – 1985: an emergency programme designed to address the development crisis of the 1980s, in the wake of protracted drought and famine that had engulfed the continent and the crippling effect of Africa's external indebtedness.
- OAU Declaration on the Political and Socio-Economic Situation in Africa and the Fundamental Changes taking place in the World (1990): which underscored Africa's resolve to seize the initiative, to determine its destiny and to address the challenges to peace, democracy and security.
- The Charter on Popular Participation adopted in 1990: a testimony to the renewed determination of the OAU to endeavour to place the African citizen at the center of development and decision-making.
- The Treaty establishing the African Economic Community (AEC) - 1991: commonly known as the Abuja Treaty, it seeks to create the AEC through six stages culminating in an African Common Market using the Regional Economic Communities (RECs) as building blocks. The Treaty has been in operation since 1994.
- The Mechanism for Conflict Prevention, Management and Resolution (1993): a practical expression of the determination of the African leadership to find solutions to conflicts, promote peace, security and stability in Africa.
- Cairo Agenda for Action (1995): a programme for relaunching Africa's political, economic and social development.
- African Common Position on Africa's External Debt Crisis (1997): a strategy for addressing the Continent's External Debt Crisis.
- The Algiers decision on Unconstitutional Changes of Government (1999) and the Lome Declaration on the framework for an OAU Response to Unconstitutional Changes (2000).
- The 2000 Solemn Declaration on the Conference on Security, Stability, Development and Cooperation: establishes the fundamental principles for the promotion of Democracy and Good Governance in the Continent.
- Responses to other challenges: Africa has initiated collective action through the OAU in the protection of environment, in fighting international terrorism, in combating the scourge of the HIV/AIDS pandemic, malaria and tuberculosis or dealing with humanitarian issues such as refugees and displaced persons, landmines, small and light weapons among others.
- The Constitutive Act of the African Union: adopted in 2000 at the Lome Summit (Togo), entered into force in 2001.

The New Partnership for Africa's Development (NEPAD) : adopted as a Programme of the AU at the Lusaka Summit (2001).

### **Advent of the AU**

The OAU initiatives paved the way for the birth of AU. In July 1999, the Assembly decided to convene an extraordinary session to expedite the process of economic and political integration in the continent. Since then, four Summits have been held leading to the official launching of the African Union:

- The Sirte Extraordinary Session (1999) decided to establish an African Union
- The Lome Summit (2000) adopted the Constitutive Act of the Union.

- The Lusaka Summit (2001) drew the road map for the implementation of the AU

The Durban Summit (2002) launched the AU and convened the 1st Assembly of the Heads of States of the African Union.

## **The Vision of the AU**

- The AU is Africa's premier institution and principal organization for the promotion of accelerated socio-economic integration of the continent, which will lead to greater unity and solidarity between African countries and peoples.
- The AU is based on the common vision of a united and strong Africa and on the need to build a partnership between governments and all segments of civil society, in particular women, youth and the private sector, in order to strengthen solidarity and cohesion amongst the peoples of Africa.
- As a continental organization it focuses on the promotion of peace, security and stability on the continent as a prerequisite for the implementation of the development and integration agenda of the Union.

## **The Objectives of the AU**

- To achieve greater unity and solidarity between the African countries and the peoples of Africa;
- To defend the sovereignty, territorial integrity and independence of its Member States;
- To accelerate the political and socio-economic integration of the continent;
- To promote and defend African common positions on issues of interest to the continent and its peoples;
- To encourage international cooperation, taking due account of the Charter of the United Nations and the Universal Declaration of Human Rights;
- To promote peace, security, and stability on the continent;
- To promote democratic principles and institutions, popular participation and good governance;
- To promote and protect human and peoples' rights in accordance with the African Charter on Human and Peoples' Rights and other relevant human rights instruments;
- To establish the necessary conditions which enable the continent to play its rightful role in the global economy and in international negotiations;
- To promote sustainable development at the economic, social and cultural levels as well as the integration of African economies;
- To promote co-operation in all fields of human activity to raise the living standards of African peoples;
- To coordinate and harmonize the policies between the existing and future Regional Economic Communities for the gradual attainment of the objectives of the Union;
- To advance the development of the continent by promoting research in all fields, in particular in science and technology;
- To work with relevant international partners in the eradication of preventable diseases and the promotion of good health on the continent.

## **The Organs of the AU**

### **The Assembly**

Composed of Heads of State and Government or their duly accredited representatives. The Assembly of Heads of State and Government is the supreme organ of the Union.

### **The Executive Council**

Composed of Ministers or Authorities designated by the Governments of Members States. The Executive Council is responsible to the Assembly.

### **The Commission**

Composed of the Chairperson, the Deputy Chairperson, eight Commissioners and Staff members; Each Commissioner shall be responsible for a portfolio.

### **The Permanent Representatives' Committee**

Composed of Permanent Representatives of Member States accredited to the Union. The Permanent Representatives Committee is charged with the responsibility of preparing the work of the Executive Council.

### **Peace and Security Council (PSC)**

By decision AHG/Dec 160 (xxxvii) of the Summit of Lusaka, July 2001, a decision was made for the creation within the African Union of the Peace and Security Council. The Protocol establishing the PSC is in the process of ratification.

## **Pan-African Parliament**

A Pan-African Parliament, and organ to ensure the full participation of African peoples in governance, development and economic integration of the Continent. The protocol relating to the composition, powers, functions and organization of the Pan-African Parliament has been signed by Member States and is in the process of ratification.

## **ECOSOCC**

The Economic, Social and Cultural Council, an advisory organ composed of different social and professional groups of the Member States of the Union. The statutes determining the functions, powers, composition and organization of the Economic, Social and Cultural Council have been prepared and will be submitted to Maputo Summit.

## **The Court of Justice**

A Court of Justice of the Union shall be established. The statutes defining the composition and functions of the Court of Justice have been prepared and will be submitted to the Assembly in Maputo.

## **The Specialized Technical Committees**

The following Specialized Technical Committees are meant to address sectoral issues and are at Ministerial Level:

- The Committee on Rural Economy and Agricultural Matters;
- The Committee on Monetary and Financial Affairs;
- The Committee on Trade, Customs and Immigration Matters;
- The Committee on Industry, Science and Technology, Energy, Natural Resources and Environment;
- The Committee on Transport, Communications and Tourism;
- The Committee on Health, Labour and Social Affairs; and
- The Committee on Education, Culture and Human Resources.

## **The Financial Institutions**

- The African Central bank
- The African Monetary Fund
- The African Investment Bank

## **Progress in the implementation of the Constitutive Act**

Since the Lusaka Summit decisions on the transition from OAU to AU, progress has been made as follows:

- The preparation and adoption of the Legal Instruments for the operationalization and the launching of the 4 principal organs: The Assembly, The Executive Council, The Commission and the Permanent Representatives Committee.
- The elaboration of the Structure of the Commission and the conditions of service of staff.
- Completion of the Studies and Legal instrument for the operationalization of ECOSOCC
- Completion of the Studies on the Financing of the AU
- Preparation of the Statutes of the Court of Justice
- Transfer of assets and liabilities from the OAU to the AU
- Preparation of a Protocol on Relations between the AU and RECS
- Finalization of the Protocol on the Pan-African Parliament (under ratification)
- Finalization of the Protocol on the Peace and Security Council (under ratification)
- Preparation of the Policy Framework for the establishment of the African Standby Force and the Military Staff Committee
- Finalization of the process of electing Members of the Commission by the Assembly of the Union in Maputo.

## **The AU Commission**

The Commission is the key organ playing a central role in the day-to-day management of the African Union. Among others, it represents the Union and defends its interests; elaborates draft common positions of the Union; prepares strategic plans and studies for the consideration of the Executive Council; elaborates, promotes, coordinates and harmonizes the programmes and policies of the Union with those of the RECs; ensures the mainstreaming of gender in all programmes and activities of the Union.

## **Members of the Commission**

- Chairperson;
- Deputy Chairperson;
- Eight (8) Commissioners.
- Staff members

### Portfolios of the Commission

1. **PEACE AND SECURITY** (Conflict Prevention, Management and Resolution, and Combating Terrorism...)
2. **POLITICAL AFFAIRS** (Human Rights, Democracy, Good Governance, Electoral Institutions, Civil Society Organizations, Humanitarian Affairs, Refugees, Returnees and Internally Displaced Persons)
3. **INFRASTRUCTURE AND ENERGY** (Energy, Transport, Communications, Infrastructure and Tourism...)
4. **SOCIAL AFFAIRS** (Health, Children, Drug Control, Population, Migration, Labour and Employment, Sports and Culture...)
5. **HUMAN RESOURCES, SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY** (Education, Information Technology Communication, Youth, Human Resources, Science and Technology...)
6. **TRADE AND INDUSTRY** (Trade, Industry, Customs and Immigration Matters...)
7. **RURAL ECONOMY AND AGRICULTURE** (Rural Economy, Agriculture and Food Security, Livestock, Environment, Water and Natural Resources and Desertification...)
8. **ECONOMIC AFFAIRS** (Economic Integration, Monetary Affairs, Private Sector Development, Investment and Resource Mobilization...).

### Interim Arrangement

In accordance with Article 33 (4) of the Constitutive Act, the Secretary General, the Assistant Secretaries General (ASGs) and the Staff of the former General Secretariat of the OAU have been designated as the Interim staff of the Commission.

After the Durban (South Africa) Summit, an interim period began with effect from July 9, 2002 to last for a duration of one year, after which the 2nd Ordinary session of the Assembly in Maputo (Mozambique) shall elect the Chairperson, the Deputy Chairperson and appoint the Commissioners through the Executive Council

### United Nations

The **United Nations Organization (UNO)** or simply **United Nations (UN)** is an international organization whose stated aims are facilitating cooperation in international law, international security, economic development, social progress, human rights, and achievement of world peace. The UN was founded in 1945 after World War II to replace the League of Nations, to stop wars between countries, and to provide a platform for dialogue. It contains multiple subsidiary organizations to carry out its missions.

There are currently 192 member states, including nearly every sovereign state in the world. From its offices around the world, the UN and its specialized agencies decide on substantive and administrative issues in regular meetings held throughout the year. The organization has six principal organs: the General Assembly (the main deliberative assembly); the Security Council (for deciding certain resolutions for peace and security); the Economic and Social Council (for assisting in promoting international economic and social cooperation and development); the Secretariat (for providing studies, information, and facilities needed by the UN); the International Court of Justice (the primary judicial organ); and the United Nations Trusteeship Council (which is currently inactive). Other prominent UN System agencies include the World Health Organization (WHO), the World Food Programme (WFP) and United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF). The UN's most visible public figure is the Secretary-General, currently Ban Ki-moon of South Korea, who attained the post in 2007. The organization is financed from assessed and voluntary contributions from its member states, and has six official languages: Arabic, Chinese (Mandarin), English, French, Russian, and Spanish.

### History

After the League of Nations failed to prevent World War II (1939–1945) and realizing that mankind cannot afford a Third World War the United Nations was established to replace the flawed League of Nations in 1945 in order to maintain international peace and promote cooperation in solving international economic, social and humanitarian problems. The earliest concrete plan for a new world organization was begun under the aegis of the U.S. State Department in 1939. Franklin D. Roosevelt first coined the term 'United Nations' as a term to describe the Allied countries. The term was first officially used on 1 January 1942, when 26 governments signed the Atlantic Charter, pledging to continue the war effort. On 25 April 1945, the UN Conference on International Organization began in San Francisco, attended by 50 governments and a number of non-governmental organizations involved in drafting the Charter of the United Nations. The UN officially came into existence on 24 October 1945 upon ratification of the Charter by the five permanent members of the Security Council—France, the Republic of China, the Soviet Union, the United Kingdom and the United States—and by a majority of the other 46 signatories. The first meetings of the General Assembly, with 51 nations represented, and the Security Council, took place in Westminster Central Hall in London in January 1946.

The organization was based at the Sperry Gyroscope Corporation's facility in Lake Success, New York, from 1946–1952, before moving to the United Nations Headquarters building in Manhattan upon its completion.

Since its creation, there has been controversy and criticism of the UN organization. In the United States, an early opponent of the UN was the John Birch Society, which began a "get US out of the UN" campaign in 1959, charging that the UN's aim was to establish a "One World Government." After the Second World War, the French Committee of National Liberation was late to be recognized by the US as the government of France, and so the country was initially excluded from the conferences that aimed at creating the new organization. Charles de Gaulle criticized the UN, famously calling it *le machin* ("the thingie"), and was not convinced that a global security alliance would help maintain world peace, preferring direct defense treaties between countries.

### Organization

The United Nations' system is based on five principal organs (formerly six—the Trusteeship Council suspended operations in 1994, upon the independence of Palau);<sup>[6]</sup> the General Assembly, the Security Council, the Economic and Social Council (ECOSOC), the Secretariat, and the International Court of Justice.

Four of the five principal organs are located at the main United Nations headquarters located on international territory in New York City. The International Court of Justice is located in The Hague, while other major agencies are based in the UN offices at Geneva, Vienna, and Nairobi. Other UN institutions are located throughout the world.

The six official languages of the United Nations, used in intergovernmental meetings and documents, are Arabic, Chinese, English, French, Russian, and Spanish,<sup>[2]</sup> while the Secretariat uses two working languages, English and French. Four of the official languages are the national languages of the permanent members of the Security Council (the United Kingdom and the United States share English as a *de facto* official language); Spanish and Arabic are the languages of the two largest blocs of official languages outside of the permanent members (Spanish being official in 20 countries, Arabic in 26). Five of the official languages were chosen when the UN was founded; Arabic was added later in 1973. The United Nations Editorial Manual states that the standard for English language documents is British usage and Oxford spelling, the Chinese writing standard is Simplified Chinese. This replaced Traditional Chinese in 1971 when the UN representation of China was changed from the Republic of China to People's Republic of China.

### General Assembly

The General Assembly is the main deliberative assembly of the United Nations. Composed of all United Nations member states, the assembly meets in regular yearly sessions under a president elected from among the member states. Over a two-week period at the start of each session, all members have the opportunity to address the assembly. Traditionally, the Secretary-General makes the first statement, followed by the president of the assembly. The first session was convened on 10 January 1946 in the Westminster Central Hall in London and included representatives of 51 nations.

When the General Assembly votes on important questions, a two-thirds majority of those present and voting is required. Examples of important questions include: recommendations on peace and security; election of members to organs; admission, suspension, and expulsion of members; and, budgetary matters. All other questions are decided by majority vote. Each member country has one vote. Apart from approval of budgetary matters, resolutions are not binding on the members. The Assembly may make recommendations on any matters within the scope of the UN, except matters of peace and security that are under Security Council consideration.

Conceivably, the one state, one vote power structure could enable states comprising just eight percent of the world population to pass a resolution by a two-thirds vote.<sup>[citation needed]</sup> However, as no more than recommendations, it is difficult to imagine a situation in which a recommendation by member states constituting just eight percent of the world's population, would be adhered to by the remaining ninety-two percent of the population, should they object. (See List of countries by population.)

### Security Council

The Security Council is charged with maintaining peace and security among countries. While other organs of the United Nations can only make 'recommendations' to member governments, the Security Council has the power to make binding decisions that member governments have agreed to carry out, under the terms of Charter Article 25.<sup>[7]</sup> The decisions of the Council are known as United Nations Security Council resolutions.

The Security Council is made up of 15 member states, consisting of 5 permanent members—China, France, Russia, the United Kingdom and the United States—and 10 non-permanent members, currently Austria, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Brazil, Gabon, Japan, Lebanon, Mexico, Nigeria, Turkey, and Uganda. The five permanent members hold veto power over substantive but not procedural resolutions allowing a permanent member to block adoption but not to block the debate of a resolution unacceptable to it. The ten temporary seats are held for two-year terms with member states voted in by the

General Assembly on a regional basis. The presidency of the Security Council is rotated alphabetically each month,<sup>[8]</sup> and is currently held by Turkey for the month of September 2010.

## Secretariat

The United Nations Secretariat is headed by the Secretary-General, assisted by a staff of international civil servants worldwide. It provides studies, information, and facilities needed by United Nations bodies for their meetings. It also carries out tasks as directed by the UN Security Council, the UN General Assembly, the UN Economic and Social Council, and other UN bodies. The United Nations Charter provides that the staff be chosen by application of the "highest standards of efficiency, competence, and integrity," with due regard for the importance of recruiting on a wide geographical basis.

The Charter provides that the staff shall not seek or receive instructions from any authority other than the UN. Each UN member country is enjoined to respect the international character of the Secretariat and not seek to influence its staff. The Secretary-General alone is responsible for staff selection.

The Secretary-General's duties include helping resolve international disputes, administering peacekeeping operations, organizing international conferences, gathering information on the implementation of Security Council decisions, and consulting with member governments regarding various initiatives. Key Secretariat offices in this area include the Office of the Coordinator of Humanitarian Affairs and the Department of Peacekeeping Operations. The Secretary-General may bring to the attention of the Security Council any matter that, in his or her opinion, may threaten international peace and security.

## Secretary-General

The Secretariat is headed by the Secretary-General, who acts as the *de facto* spokesman and leader of the UN. The current Secretary-General is Ban Ki-moon, who took over from Kofi Annan in 2007 and will be eligible for reappointment when his first term expires in 2011.

Envisioned by Franklin D. Roosevelt as a "world moderator", the position is defined in the UN Charter as the organization's "chief administrative officer",<sup>[10]</sup> but the Charter also states that the Secretary-General can bring to the Security Council's attention "any matter which in his opinion may threaten the maintenance of international peace and security",<sup>[11]</sup> giving the position greater scope for action on the world stage. The position has evolved into a dual role of an administrator of the UN organization, and a diplomat and mediator addressing disputes between member states and finding consensus to global issues.<sup>[9]</sup>

The Secretary-General is appointed by the General Assembly, after being recommended by the Security Council, any member of which can veto, and the General Assembly can theoretically override the Security Council's recommendation if a majority vote is not achieved, although this has not happened so far. There are no specific criteria for the post, but over the years it has become accepted that the post shall be held for one or two terms of five years, that the post shall be appointed on the basis of geographical rotation, and that the Secretary-General shall not originate from one of the five permanent Security Council member states.

Secretaries-General of the United Nations					
No.	Name	Country of origin	Took office	Left office	Note
1	<b>Trygve Lie</b>	 Norway	2 February 1946	10 November 1952	Resigned; First Secretary-General from Scandinavia
2	<b>Dag Hammarskjöld</b>	 Sweden	10 April 1953	18 September 1961	Died while in office
3	<b>U Thant</b>	 Burma	30 November 1961	1 January 1972	First Secretary-General from Asia
4	<b>Kurt Waldheim</b>	 Austria	1 January 1972	1 January 1982	
5	<b>Javier Pérez de Cuéllar</b>	 Peru	1 January 1982	1 January 1992	First Secretary-General from America
6	<b>Boutros Boutros-Ghali</b>	 Egypt	1 January 1992	1 January 1997	First Secretary-General from Africa
7	<b>Kofi Annan</b>	 Ghana	1 January 1997	1 January 2007	
8	<b>Ban Ki-moon</b>	 South	1 January 2007	Incumbent	

Korea

## International Court of Justice

The International Court of Justice (ICJ), located in The Hague, Netherlands, is the primary judicial organ of the United Nations. Established in 1945 by the United Nations Charter, the Court began work in 1946 as the successor to the Permanent Court of International Justice. The Statute of the International Court of Justice, similar to that of its predecessor, is the main constitutional document constituting and regulating the Court. It is based in the Peace Palace in The Hague, Netherlands, sharing the building with the Hague Academy of International Law, a private centre for the study of international law. Several of the Court's current judges are either alumni or former faculty members of the Academy. Its purpose is to adjudicate disputes among states. The court has heard cases related to war crimes, illegal state interference and ethnic cleansing, among others, and continues to hear cases.

A related court, the International Criminal Court (ICC), began operating in 2002 through international discussions initiated by the General Assembly. It is the first permanent international court charged with trying those who commit the most serious crimes under international law, including war crimes and genocide. The ICC is functionally independent of the UN in terms of personnel and financing, but some meetings of the ICC governing body, the Assembly of States Parties to the Rome Statute, are held at the UN. There is a "relationship agreement" between the ICC and the UN that governs how the two institutions regard each other legally.<sup>[17]</sup>

## Economic and Social Council

The Economic and Social Council (ECOSOC) assists the General Assembly in promoting international economic and social cooperation and development. ECOSOC has 54 members, all of which are elected by the General Assembly for a three-year term. The president is elected for a one-year term and chosen amongst the small or middle powers represented on ECOSOC. ECOSOC meets once a year in July for a four-week session. Since 1998, it has held another meeting each April with finance ministers heading key committees of the World Bank and the International Monetary Fund (IMF). Viewed separate from the specialized bodies it coordinates, ECOSOC's functions include information gathering, advising member nations, and making recommendations. In addition, ECOSOC is well-positioned to provide policy coherence and coordinate the overlapping functions of the UN's subsidiary bodies and it is in these roles that it is most active.


















## Specialized institutions

Main article: List of specialized agencies of the United Nations

There are many UN organizations and agencies that function to work on particular issues. Some of the most well-known agencies are the International Atomic Energy Agency, the Food and Agriculture Organization, UNESCO (United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization), the World Bank and the World Health Organization.

It is through these agencies that the UN performs most of its humanitarian work. Examples include mass vaccination programmes (through the WHO), the avoidance of famine and malnutrition (through the work of the WFP) and the protection of vulnerable and displaced people (for example, by the UNHCR).

The United Nations Charter stipulates that each primary organ of the UN can establish various specialized agencies to fulfil its duties.

Specialized agencies of the United Nations						
No.	Acronyms	Flag	Agency	Headquarters	Head	Established in
1	FAO		<b>Food and Agriculture Organization</b>	 Rome, Italy	 Jacques Diouf	1945
2	IAEA		<b>International Atomic Energy Agency</b>	 Vienna, Austria	 Yukiya Amano	1957
3	ICAO		<b>International Civil Aviation Organization</b>	 Montreal, Canada	 Raymond Benjamin	1947
4	IFAD		<b>International Fund for Agricultural Development</b>	 Rome, Italy	 Kanayo F. Nwanze	1977
5	ILO		<b>International Labour Organization</b>	 Geneva, Switzerland	 Juan Somavía	1946 (1919)
6	IMO		<b>International Maritime Organization</b>	 London, United Kingdom	 Efthimios E. Mitropoulos	1948



## NATIONAL & STRATEGIC STUDIES

7	IMF		<b>International Monetary Fund</b>	 Washington, D.C., USA	 Dominique Strauss-Kahn	1945 (1944)
8	ITU		<b>International Telecommunication Union</b>	 Geneva, Switzerland	 Hamadoun Touré	1947 (1865)
9	UNESCO		<b>United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization</b>	 Paris, France	 Irina Bokova	1946
10	UNIDO		<b>United Nations Industrial Development Organization</b>	 Vienna, Austria	 Kande Yumkella	1967
11	UPU		<b>Universal Postal Union</b>	 Bern, Switzerland	 Edouard Dayan	1947 (1874)
12	WB		<b>World Bank</b>	 Washington, D.C, USA	 Robert B. Zoellick	1945 (1944)
13	WFP		<b>World Food Programme</b>	 Rome, Italy	 Josette Sheeran	1963
14	WHO		<b>World Health Organization</b>	 Geneva, Switzerland	 Margaret Chan	1948
15	WIPO		<b>World Intellectual Property Organization</b>	 Geneva, Switzerland	 Francis Gurry	1974
16	WMO		<b>World Meteorological Organization</b>	 Geneva, Switzerland	 Alexander Bedritsky	1950 (1873)
17	UNWTO		<b>World Tourism Organization</b>	 Madrid, Spain	 Taleb Rifai	1974

### Membership

An animation showing the timeline of accession of UN member states, *according to the UN*. Note that Antarctica has no government; political control of Western Sahara is in dispute; and the territories administered by the Republic of China (Taiwan) and Kosovo are considered by the UN to be provinces of the People's Republic of China and Republic of Serbia, respectively.

With the addition of Montenegro on 28 June 2006, there are currently 192 United Nations member states, including all fully recognized independent states<sup>[18]</sup> apart from Vatican City (the Holy See, which holds sovereignty over the state of Vatican City, is a permanent observer). The United Nations Charter outlines the rules for membership:

1. Membership in the United Nations is open to all other peace-loving states which accept the obligations contained in the present Charter and, in the judgment of the Organization, are able and willing to carry out these obligations.
2. The admission of any such state to membership in the United Nations will be effected by a decision of the General Assembly upon the recommendation of the Security Council.

—United Nations Charter, Chapter 2, Article 4, <http://www.un.org/aboutun/charter/>

### Group of 77

The Group of 77 at the UN is a loose coalition of developing nations, designed to promote its members' collective economic interests and create an enhanced joint negotiating capacity in the United Nations. There were 77 founding members of the organization, but the organization has since expanded to 130 member countries. The group was founded on 15 June 1964 by the "Joint Declaration of the Seventy-Seven Countries" issued at the United Nations Conference on Trade and Development (UNCTAD). The first major meeting was in Algiers in 1967, where the *Charter of Algiers* was adopted and the basis for permanent institutional structures was begun.<sup>[20]</sup>

### Stated objectives

#### Peacekeeping and security

UN peacekeeping missions. Dark blue regions indicate current missions, while light blue regions represent former missions.

The UN, after approval by the Security Council, sends peacekeepers to regions where armed conflict has recently ceased or paused to enforce the terms of peace agreements and to discourage combatants from resuming hostilities. Since the UN does not maintain its own military, peacekeeping forces are voluntarily provided by member states of the UN. The forces,

also called the "Blue Helmets", who enforce UN accords are awarded United Nations Medals, which are considered international decorations instead of military decorations. The peacekeeping force as a whole received the Nobel Peace Prize in 1988.

The founders of the UN had envisaged that the organization would act to prevent conflicts between nations and make future wars impossible, however the outbreak of the Cold War made peacekeeping agreements extremely difficult because of the division of the world into hostile camps. Following the end of the Cold War, there were renewed calls for the UN to become the agency for achieving world peace, as there are several dozen ongoing conflicts that continue to rage around the globe.

A 2005 RAND Corp study found the UN to be successful in two out of three peacekeeping efforts. It compared UN nation-building efforts to those of the United States, and found that seven out of eight UN cases are at peace, as compared with four out of eight US cases at peace.<sup>[21]</sup> Also in 2005, the Human Security Report documented a decline in the number of wars, genocides and human rights abuses since the end of the Cold War, and presented evidence, albeit circumstantial, that international activism—mostly spearheaded by the UN—has been the main cause of the decline in armed conflict since the end of the Cold War.<sup>[22]</sup> Situations where the UN has not only acted to keep the peace but also occasionally intervened include the Korean War (1950–1953), and the authorization of intervention in Iraq after the Persian Gulf War in 1990.

The UN has also drawn criticism for perceived failures. In many cases, member states have shown reluctance to achieve or enforce Security Council resolutions, an issue that stems from the UN's intergovernmental nature—seen by some as simply an association of 192 member states who must reach consensus, not an independent organization. Disagreements in the Security Council about military action and intervention are seen as having failed to prevent the 1994 Rwandan Genocide,<sup>[23]</sup> failed to provide humanitarian aid and intervene in the Second Congo War, failed to intervene in the 1995 Srebrenica massacre and protect a refugee haven by authorizing peacekeepers to use force, failure to deliver food to starving people in Somalia, failure to implement provisions of Security Council resolutions related to the Israeli-Palestinian conflict, and continuing failure to prevent genocide or provide assistance in Darfur. UN peacekeepers have also been accused of child rape, sexual abuse or soliciting prostitutes during various peacekeeping missions, starting in 2003, in the Congo,<sup>[24]</sup> Haiti,<sup>[25][26]</sup> Liberia,<sup>[27]</sup> Sudan,<sup>[28]</sup> Burundi and Côte d'Ivoire.<sup>[29]</sup> In 2004, former Israeli ambassador to the UN Dore Gold criticized what it called the organization's moral relativism in the face of (and occasional support of)<sup>[30]</sup> genocide and terrorism that occurred between the moral clarity of its founding period and the present day. Gold specifically mentions Yasser Arafat's 1988 invitation to address the General Assembly as a low point in the UN's history.<sup>[31]</sup>

In addition to peacekeeping, the UN is also active in encouraging disarmament. Regulation of armaments was included in the writing of the UN Charter in 1945 and was envisioned as a way of limiting the use of human and economic resources for the creation of them.<sup>[32]</sup> However, the advent of nuclear weapons came only weeks after the signing of the charter and immediately halted concepts of arms limitation and disarmament, resulting in the first resolution of the first ever General Assembly meeting calling for specific proposals for "the elimination from national armaments of atomic weapons and of all other major weapons adaptable to mass destruction".<sup>[33]</sup> The principal forums for disarmament issues are the General Assembly First Committee, the UN Disarmament Commission, and the Conference on Disarmament, and considerations have been made of the merits of a ban on testing nuclear weapons, outer space arms control, the banning of chemical weapons and land mines, nuclear and conventional disarmament, nuclear-weapon-free zones, the reduction of military budgets, and measures to strengthen international security.

The UN is one of the official supporters of the World Security Forum, a major international conference on the effects of global catastrophes and disasters, taking place in the United Arab Emirates, in October 2008.

### Human rights and humanitarian assistance

The pursuit of human rights was a central reason for creating the UN. World War II atrocities and genocide led to a ready consensus that the new organization must work to prevent any similar tragedies in the future. An early objective was creating a legal framework for considering and acting on complaints about human rights violations. The UN Charter obliges all member nations to promote "universal respect for, and observance of, human rights" and to take "joint and separate action" to that end. The Universal Declaration of Human Rights, though not legally binding, was adopted by the General Assembly in 1948 as a common standard of achievement for all. The Assembly regularly takes up human rights issues.

The UN and its agencies are central in upholding and implementing the principles enshrined in the Universal Declaration of Human Rights. A case in point is support by the UN for countries in transition to democracy. Technical assistance in providing free and fair elections, improving judicial structures, drafting constitutions, training human rights officials, and transforming armed movements into political parties have contributed significantly to democratization worldwide. The UN has helped run elections in countries with little or no democratic history, including recently in Afghanistan and East Timor. The UN is also a forum to support the right of women to participate fully in the political, economic, and social life of their countries. The UN contributes to raising consciousness of the concept of human rights through its covenants and

its attention to specific abuses through its General Assembly, Security Council resolutions, or International Court of Justice rulings.

The purpose of the United Nations Human Rights Council, established in 2006,<sup>[34]</sup> is to address human rights violations. The Council is the successor to the United Nations Commission on Human Rights, which was often criticised for the high-profile positions it gave to member states that did not guarantee the human rights of their own citizens. The council has 47 members distributed by region, which each serve three year terms, and may not serve three consecutive terms. A candidate to the body must be approved by a majority of the General Assembly. In addition, the council has strict rules for membership, including a universal human rights review. While some members with questionable human rights records have been elected, it is fewer than before with the increased focus on each member state's human rights record. The rights of some 370 million indigenous peoples around the world is also a focus for the UN, with a Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples being approved by the General Assembly in 2007. The declaration outlines the individual and collective rights to culture, language, education, identity, employment and health, thereby addressing post-colonial issues which had confronted indigenous peoples for centuries. The declaration aims to maintain, strengthen and encourage the growth of indigenous institutions, cultures and traditions. It also prohibits discrimination against indigenous peoples and promotes their active participation in matters which concern their past, present and future.

In conjunction with other organizations such as the Red Cross, the UN provides food, drinking water, shelter and other humanitarian services to populations suffering from famine, displaced by war, or afflicted by other disasters. Major humanitarian branches of the UN are the World Food Programme (which helps feed more than 100 million people a year in 80 countries), the office of the High Commissioner for Refugees with projects in over 116 countries, as well as peacekeeping projects in over 24 countries.

### **Social and economic development**

The UN is involved in supporting development, e.g. by the formulation of the Millennium Development Goals. The UN Development Programme (UNDP) is the largest multilateral source of grant technical assistance in the world. Organizations like the World Health Organization (WHO), UNAIDS, and The Global Fund to Fight AIDS, Tuberculosis and Malaria are leading institutions in the battle against diseases around the world, especially in poor countries. The UN Population Fund is a major provider of reproductive services.

The UN also promotes human development through various related agencies. The World Bank Group and International Monetary Fund (IMF), for example, are independent, specialized agencies and observers within the UN framework, according to a 1947 agreement. They were initially formed as separate from the UN through the Bretton Woods Agreement in 1944.<sup>[39]</sup>

The UN annually publishes the Human Development Index (HDI), a comparative measure ranking countries by poverty, literacy, education, life expectancy, and other factors.

The Millennium Development Goals are eight goals that all 192 United Nations member states have agreed to try to achieve by the year 2015.<sup>[40]</sup> This was declared in the United Nations Millennium Declaration, signed in September 2000.

### **Mandates**

From time to time the different bodies of the United Nations pass resolutions which contain operating paragraphs that begin with the words "requests", "calls upon", or "encourages", which the Secretary-General interprets as a mandate to set up a temporary organization or do something. These mandates can be as little as researching and publishing a written report, or mounting a full scale peace-keeping operation (usually the exclusive domain of the Security Council).

Although the specialized institutions, such as the WHO, were originally set up by this means, they are not the same as mandates because they are permanent organizations that exist independently of the UN with their own membership structure. One could say that original mandate was simply to cover the process of setting up the institution, and has therefore long expired. Most mandates expire after a limited time period and require renewal from the body which set them up.

One of the outcomes of the 2005 World Summit was a mandate (labelled id 17171) for the Secretary-General to "review all mandates older than five years originating from resolutions of the General Assembly and other organs". To facilitate this review and to finally bring coherence to the organization, the Secretariat has produced an on-line registry of mandates to draw together the reports relating to each one and create an overall picture.<sup>[41]</sup>











## Other

Over the lifetime of the UN, over 80 colonies have attained independence.<sup>[42]</sup> The General Assembly adopted the Declaration on the Granting of Independence to Colonial Countries and Peoples in 1960 with no votes against but abstentions from all major colonial powers.

Through the UN Committee on Decolonization, created in 1962, the UN has focused considerable attention on decolonization. It has also supported the new states that have arisen as a result of self-determination initiatives. The committee has overseen the decolonization of every country larger than 20,000 km<sup>2</sup> and removed them from the United Nations list of Non-Self-Governing Territories, besides Western Sahara, a country larger than the UK only relinquished by Spain in 1975.

The UN declares and coordinates international observances, periods of time to observe some issue of international interest or concern. Using the symbolism of the UN, a specially designed logo for the year, and the infrastructure of the United Nations System, various days and years have become catalysts to advancing key issues of concern on a global scale. For example, World Tuberculosis Day, Earth Day and International Year of Deserts and Desertification.

## Funding

Top 10 donators to the UN budget, 2009	
Member state	Contribution (% of UN budget)
 <b>United States</b>	22.00%
 <b>Japan</b>	16.624%
 <b>Germany</b>	8.577%
 <b>United Kingdom</b>	6.642%
 <b>France</b>	6.301%
 <b>Italy</b>	5.079%
 <b>Canada</b>	2.977%
 <b>Spain</b>	2.968%
 <b>China</b>	2.667%
 <b>Mexico</b>	2.257%
<b>Other member states</b>	23.908%

The UN is financed from assessed and voluntary contributions from member states. The regular two-year budgets of the UN and its specialized agencies are funded by assessments. The General Assembly approves the regular budget and determines the assessment for each member. This is broadly based on the relative capacity of each country to pay, as measured by their Gross National Income (GNI), with adjustments for external debt and low per capita income.<sup>[45]</sup>

The Assembly has established the principle that the UN should not be overly dependent on any one member to finance its operations. Thus, there is a 'ceiling' rate, setting the maximum amount any member is assessed for the regular budget. In December 2000, the Assembly revised the scale of assessments to reflect current global circumstances. As part of that revision, the regular budget ceiling was reduced from 25% to 22%. The U.S. is the only member that has met the ceiling. In addition to a ceiling rate, the minimum amount assessed to any member nation (or 'floor' rate) is set at 0.001% of the UN budget. Also, for the least developed countries (LDC), a ceiling rate of 0.01% is applied. The current operating budget is estimated at \$4.19 billion for the 2-year (biennial) period of 2008 to 2009, or a little over 2 billion dollars a year<sup>[45]</sup> (refer to table for major contributors).

A large share of UN expenditures addresses the core UN mission of peace and security. The peacekeeping budget for the 2005–2006 fiscal year is approximately \$5 billion (compared to approximately \$1.5 billion for the UN core budget over the same period), with some 70,000 troops deployed in 17 missions around the world.<sup>[46]</sup> UN peace operations are funded by assessments, using a formula derived from the regular funding scale, but including a weighted surcharge for the five permanent Security Council members, who must approve all peacekeeping operations. This surcharge serves to offset discounted peacekeeping assessment rates for less developed countries. As of 1 January 2008, the top 10 providers of assessed financial contributions to United Nations peacekeeping operations were: the United States, Japan, Germany, the United Kingdom, France, Italy, China, Canada, Spain, and the Republic of Korea.<sup>[47]</sup>

Special UN programmes not included in the regular budget (such as UNICEF, the WFP and UNDP) are financed by voluntary contributions from other member governments. Most of this is financial contributions, but some is in the form of agricultural commodities donated for afflicted populations.

Because their funding is voluntary, many of these agencies suffer severe shortages during economic recessions. In July 2009, the World Food Programme reported that it has been forced to cut services because of insufficient funding.<sup>[48]</sup> It has received barely a quarter of the total it needs for the 09/10 financial year.

### Personnel policy

The UN and its agencies are immune to the laws of the countries where they operate, safeguarding UN's impartiality with regard to the host and member countries.<sup>[49]</sup>

Despite their independence in matters of human resources policy, the UN and its agencies voluntarily apply the laws of member states regarding same-sex marriages, allowing decisions about the status of employees in a same-sex partnership to be based on nationality. The UN and its agencies recognize same-sex marriages only if the employees are citizens of countries that recognize the marriage. This practice is not specific to the recognition of same-sex marriage but reflects a common practice of the UN for a number of human resources matters. It has to be noted though that some agencies provide limited benefits to domestic partners of their staff and that some agencies do not recognise same-sex marriage or domestic partnership of their staff.

### Reform

Since its founding, there have been many calls for reform of the United Nations, although little consensus on how to do so. Some want the UN to play a greater or more effective role in world affairs, while others want its role reduced to humanitarian work.<sup>[50]</sup> There have also been numerous calls for the UN Security Council's membership to be increased, for different ways of electing the UN's Secretary-General, and for a United Nations Parliamentary Assembly.

The UN has also been accused of bureaucratic inefficiency and waste. During the 1990s the United States withheld dues citing inefficiency, and only started repayment on the condition that a major reforms initiative was introduced. In 1994, the Office of Internal Oversight Services (OIOS) was established by the General Assembly to serve as an efficiency watchdog.

An official reform programme was begun by Kofi Annan in 1997. Reforms mentioned include changing the permanent membership of the Security Council (which currently reflects the power relations of 1945), making the bureaucracy more transparent, accountable and efficient, making the UN more democratic, and imposing an international tariff on arms manufacturers worldwide.

In September 2005, the UN convened a World Summit that brought together the heads of most member states, calling the summit "a once-in-a-generation opportunity to take bold decisions in the areas of development, security, human rights and reform of the United Nations." Kofi Annan had proposed that the summit agree on a global "grand bargain" to reform the UN, renewing the organisation's focus on peace, security, human rights and development, and to make it better equipped at facing 21st century issues. The *World Summit Outcome Document* delineated the conclusions of the meeting, including: the creation of a Peacebuilding Commission, to help countries emerging from conflict; a Human Rights Council and a democracy fund; a clear and unambiguous condemnation of terrorism "in all its forms and manifestations"; agreements to devote more resources to the Office of Internal Oversight Services; agreements to spend billions more on

achieving the Millennium Development Goals; the dissolution of the Trusteeship Council, because of the completion of its mission; and, the agreement that individual states, with the assistance of the international community, have the "responsibility to protect" populations from genocide, war crimes, ethnic cleansing and crimes against humanity- with the understanding that the international community is prepared to act "collectively" in a "timely and decisive manner" to protect vulnerable civilians should a state "manifestly fail" in fulfilling its responsibility.

The Office of Internal Oversight Services is being restructured to more clearly define its scope and mandate, and will receive more resources. In addition, to improve the oversight and auditing capabilities of the General Assembly, an Independent Audit Advisory Committee (IAAC) is being created. In June 2007, the Fifth Committee created a draft resolution for the terms of reference of this committee.

An ethics office was established in 2006, responsible for administering new financial disclosure and whistleblower protection policies. Working with the OIOS, the ethics office also plans to implement a policy to avoid fraud and corruption.<sup>[56]</sup> The Secretariat is in the process of reviewing all UN mandates that are more than five years old. The review is intended to determine which duplicative or unnecessary programmes should be eliminated. Not all member states are in agreement as to which of the over 7000 mandates should be reviewed. The dispute centres on whether mandates that have been renewed should be examined.

Indeed, the obstacles identified – in particular, the lack of information on the resource implications of each mandate – constituted sufficient justification for the General Assembly to discontinue the mandate review in September 2008. In the meantime, the General Assembly launched a number of new loosely related reform initiatives in April 2007, covering international environmental governance, 'Delivering as One' at the country level to enhance the consolidation of UN programme activities and a unified gender organization. Whereas little was achieved on the first two issues, the General Assembly approved in September 2010 the establishment of 'UN Women' as the new UN organization for gender equality and the empowerment of women. UN Women was established by unifying the resources and mandates of four small entities for greater impact and its first head is Ms. Michelle Bachelet, former President of Chile .

### Non-Aligned Movement

The **Non-Aligned Movement (NAM)** is an intergovernmental organization of states considering themselves not aligned formally with or against any major power bloc. As of 2010, the organization has 118 members and 18 observer countries.<sup>[1]</sup> Generally speaking (as of 2010), the Non-Aligned Movement members can be described as all of those countries which belong to the Group of 77 (along with Belarus and Uzbekistan), but which are not observers in Non-Aligned Movement and are not oceanian (with the exception of Papua New Guinea and Vanuatu).

The organization was founded in Belgrade in 1961, and was largely the brainchild of Indonesia's first President, Sukarno, India's first Prime Minister, Jawaharlal Nehru, Egypt's second President, Gamal Abdel Nasser, and Yugoslavia's first President, Josip Broz Tito. All four leaders were prominent advocates of a middle course for states in the Developing World between the Western and Eastern blocs in the Cold War.

The purpose of the organisation as stated in the *Havana Declaration of 1979* is to ensure "the national independence, sovereignty, territorial integrity and security of non-aligned countries" in their "struggle against imperialism, colonialism, neo-colonialism, racism, and all forms of foreign aggression, occupation, domination, interference or hegemony as well as against great power and bloc politics."<sup>[2]</sup> They represent nearly two-thirds of the United Nations's members and 55% of the world population, particularly countries considered to be developing or part of the third world.<sup>[3]</sup>

Members have, at various times, included: Yugoslavia, Argentina, SWAPO, Cyprus, and Malta. Brazil has never been a formal member of the movement, but shares many of the aims of Non-Aligned Movement and frequently sends observers to the Non-Aligned Movement's summits. While the organization was intended to be as close an alliance as NATO (1949) or the Warsaw Pact (1955), it had little cohesion and many of its members were actually quite closely aligned with one or another of the super powers. Additionally, some members were involved in serious conflicts with other members (e.g. India and Pakistan, Iran and Iraq). The movement fractured from its own internal contradictions when the Soviet Union invaded Afghanistan in 1979. While the Soviet allies supported the invasion, other members of the movement (particularly predominantly Muslim states) condemned it.

Because the Non-Aligned Movement was formed as an attempt to thwart the Cold War,<sup>[4]</sup> it has struggled to find relevance since the Cold War ended. After the breakup of Yugoslavia, a founding member, its membership was suspended<sup>[5]</sup> in 1992 at the regular Ministerial Meeting of the Movement, held in New York during the regular yearly session of the General Assembly of the United Nations. At the Summit of the Movement in Jakarta, Indonesia (September 1, 1992 – September 6, 1992) Yugoslavia was suspended or expelled from the Movement.<sup>[6]</sup> The successor states of the SFR Yugoslavia have expressed little interest in membership, though some have observer status. In 2004, Malta and Cyprus ceased to be members and joined the European Union. Belarus remains the sole member of the Movement in Europe. Turkmenistan, Belarus and Dominican Republic are the most recent entrants. The application of Bosnia and Herzegovina, and Costa Rica were rejected in 1995 and 1998. Serbia has been suspended since 1992 due to the Serbian Government's involvement in the Bosnian War (officially as the Government of the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia at the time).<sup>[7]</sup>

## Origins

Independent countries, who chose not to join any of the Cold War blocs, were also known as non aligned nations.

The term "non-alignment" itself was coined by Indian Prime Minister Nehru during his speech in 1954 in Colombo, Sri Lanka. In this speech, Nehru described the five pillars to be used as a guide for Sino-Indian relations, which were first put forth by Chinese Premier Zhou Enlai. Called Panchsheel (five restraints), these principles would later serve as the basis of the Non-Aligned Movement.<sup>[citation needed]</sup> The five principles were:

- Mutual respect for each other's territorial integrity and sovereignty
- Mutual non-aggression
- Mutual non-interference in domestic affairs
- Equality and mutual benefit
- Peaceful co-existence

A significant milestone in the development of the Non-aligned movement was the 1955 Bandung Conference, a conference of Asian and African states hosted by Indonesian president Sukarno. Sukarno has given a significant contribution to promote this movement. The attending nations declared their desire not to become involved in the Cold War and adopted a "declaration on promotion of world peace and cooperation", which included Nehru's five principles. Six years after Bandung, an initiative of Yugoslav president Tito led to the first official Non-Aligned Movement Summit, which was held in September 1961 in Belgrade.

At the Lusaka Conference in September 1970, the member nations added as aims of the movement the peaceful resolution of disputes and the abstention from the big power military alliances and pacts. Another added aim was opposition to stationing of military bases in foreign countries.<sup>[4]</sup>

The founding fathers of the Non-aligned movement were: Sukarno of Indonesia, Nehru of India, and Josip Broz Tito of Yugoslavia, Gamal Abdul Nasser of Egypt and Kwame Nkrumah of Ghana. Their actions were known as 'The Initiative of Five'.

## Organizational structure and membership

The organizational structure and membership are complementary aspects of the group.<sup>[8]</sup>

Requirements of the Non-Aligned Movement with the key beliefs of the United Nations. The latest requirements are now that the candidate country has displayed practices in accordance with:

- Respect for fundamental human rights and for the purposes and principles of the Charter of the United Nations.
- Respect for the sovereignty and territorial integrity of all nations.
- Recognition of the movements for national independence.
- Recognition of the equality of all races and of the equality of all nations, large and small.
- Abstention from intervention or interference in the internal affairs of another country.
- Respect for the right of each nation to defend itself singly or collectively, in conformity with the Charter of the United Nations.
- Refraining from acts or threats of aggression or the use of force against the territorial integrity or political independence of any country.
- Settlement of all international disputes by peaceful means, in conformity with the Charter of the United Nations.
- Promotion of mutual interests and co-operation.
- Respect for justice and international obligations.

## Policies and ideology

Secretaries General of the NAM had included such diversified figures as Suharto, an authoritarian anti-communist, and Nelson Mandela, a democratic socialist and famous anti-apartheid activist. Consisting of many governments with vastly different ideologies, the Non-Aligned Movement is unified by its commitment in world peace and security. At the seventh summit held in New Delhi in March 1983, the movement described itself as the "history's biggest peace movement".<sup>[9]</sup> The movement places equal emphasis on disarmament. NAM's commitment to peace pre-dates its formal institutionalisation

in 1961. The Brioni meeting between heads of governments of India, Egypt and Yugoslavia in 1956 recognized that there exists a vital link between struggle for peace and endeavours for disarmament.<sup>[9]</sup>

The Non-aligned movement believes in policies and practices of cooperation, especially those that are multilateral and provide mutual benefit to all those involved. Many of the members of the Non-Aligned Movement are also members of the United Nations and both organisations have a stated policy of peaceful cooperation, yet successes that the NAM has had in multilateral agreements tends to be ignored by the larger, western and developed nation dominated UN.<sup>[10]</sup> African concerns about apartheid were linked with Arab-Asian concerns about Palestine<sup>[10]</sup> and success of multilateral cooperation in these areas has been a stamp of moderate success. The Non-Aligned Movement has played a major role in various ideological conflicts throughout its existence, including extreme opposition to apartheid regimes and support of liberation movements in various locations including Zimbabwe and South Africa. The support of these sorts of movements stems from a belief that every state has the right to base policies and practices with national interests in mind and not as a result of relations to a particular power bloc.<sup>[3]</sup> The Non-aligned movement has become a voice of support for issues facing developing nations and is still contains ideals that are legitimate within this context.

### Contemporary relevance

Since the end of the Cold War and the formal end of colonialism, the Non-aligned movement has been forced to redefine itself and reinvent its purpose in the current world system. A major question has been whether many of its foundational ideologies, principally national independence, territorial integrity, and the struggle against colonialism and imperialism, can be applied to contemporary issues. The movement has emphasised its principles of multilateralism, equality, and mutual non-aggression in attempting to become a stronger voice for the global South, and an instrument that can be utilised to promote the needs of member nations at the international level and strengthen their political leverage when negotiating with developed nations. In its efforts to advance Southern interests, the movement has stressed the importance of cooperation and unity amongst member states,<sup>[11]</sup> but as in the past, cohesion remains a problem since the size of the organisation and the divergence of agendas and allegiances present the ongoing potential for fragmentation. While agreement on basic principles has been smooth, taking definitive action vis-à-vis particular international issues has been rare, with the movement preferring to assert its criticism or support rather than pass hard-line resolutions.<sup>[12]</sup> The movement continues to see a role for itself, as in its view, the world's poorest nations remain exploited and marginalised, no longer by opposing superpowers, but rather in a uni-polar world,<sup>[13]</sup> and it is Western hegemony and neo-colonialism that that the movement has really re-aligned itself against. It opposes foreign occupation, interference in internal affairs, and aggressive unilateral measures, but it has also shifted to focus on the socio-economic challenges facing member states, especially the inequalities manifested by globalisation and the implications of neo-liberal policies. The non-aligned movement has identified economic underdevelopment, poverty, and social injustices as growing threats to peace and security.<sup>[14]</sup>

### Current activities and positions

In recent years the US has become a target of the organisation. The US invasion of Iraq and the War on Terrorism, its attempts to stifle Iran and North Korea's nuclear plans, and its other actions have been denounced as human rights violations and attempts to run roughshod over the sovereignty of smaller nations.<sup>[15]</sup> The movement's leaders have also criticised the American control over the United Nations and other international structures. While the organisation has rejected terrorism, it condemns the association of terrorism with a particular religion, nationality, or ethnicity, and recognises the rights of those struggling against colonialism and foreign occupation.<sup>[11]</sup>

#### Self-determination of Puerto Rico

Since 1961, the group have supported the discussion of the case of Puerto Rico's self-determination before the United Nations. A resolution on the matter will be proposed on the XV Summit by the Hostosian National Independence Movement.<sup>[16]</sup>

#### Self-determination of Western Sahara

Since 1973, the group have supported the discussion of the case of Western Sahara's self-determination before the United Nations<sup>[17]</sup>. The Non-Aligned Movement reaffirmed in its last meeting (Sharm El Sheikh 2009) the support to the Self-determination of the Sahrawi people by choosing between any valid option, welcomed the direct conversations between the parts, and remembered the responsibility of the United Nations on the Sahrawi issue<sup>[18]</sup>.

#### Anti-Zionism

The Non-Aligned Movement's Havana Declaration of 1979 adopted anti-Zionism as part of the movement's agenda. The movement has denounced Israel's occupation of the West Bank and Gaza Strip.<sup>[19]</sup> It has called upon Israel to halt its settlement activities, open up border crossings, and cease the use of force and violence against civilians. The UN has also been asked to pressure Israel and to do more to prevent human rights abuses.



## Sustainable development

The movement is publicly committed to the tenets of sustainable development and the attainment of the Millennium Development Goals, but it believes that the international community has not created conditions conducive to development and has infringed upon the right to sovereign development by each member state. Issues such as globalisation, the debt burden, unfair trade practices, the decline in foreign aid, donor conditionalities, and the lack of democracy in international financial decision-making are cited as factors inhibiting development.<sup>[20]</sup>

## Reforms of the UN

The Non-Aligned Movement has been quite outspoken in its criticism of current UN structures and power dynamics, mostly in how the organisation has been utilised by powerful states in ways that violate the movement's principles. It has made a number of recommendations that would strengthen the representation and power of 'non-aligned' states. The proposed reforms are also aimed at improving the transparency and democracy of UN decision-making. The UN Security Council is the element considered the most distorted, undemocratic, and in need of reshaping.<sup>[21]</sup>

## South-south cooperation

Lately the Non-Aligned Movement has collaborated with other organisations of the developing world, primarily the Group of 77, forming a number of joint committees and releasing statements and document representing the shared interests of both groups. This dialogue and cooperation can be taken as an effort to increase the global awareness about the organisation and bolster its political clout.

## Cultural diversity and human rights



The movement accepts the universality of human rights and social justice, but fiercely resists cultural homogenisation. In line with its views on sovereignty, the organisation appeals for the protection of cultural diversity, and the tolerance of the religious, socio-cultural, and historical particularities that define human rights in a specific region.<sup>[22]</sup>

## Working groups, task forces, committees<sup>[23]</sup>

- High-Level Working Group for the Restructuring of the United Nations
- Working Group on Human Rights
- Working Group on Peace-Keeping Operations
- Working Group on Disarmament
- Committee on Palestine
- Task Force on Somalia
- Non-Aligned Security Caucus
- Standing Ministerial Committee for Economic Cooperation
- Joint Coordinating Committee (chaired by Chairman of G-77 and Chairman of NAM)

## Summits
















Countries represented in the Asia-Africa Conference in Bandung, Indonesia on 1955 which was a precursor to the organisation. Twenty-nine countries were present representing over half the world's population.

1.  Belgrade, September 1–6, 1961
2.  Cairo, October 5–10, 1964
3.  Lusaka, September 8–10, 1970
4.  Algiers, September 5–9, 1973
5.  Colombo, August 16–19, 1976
6.  Havana, September 3–9, 1979
7.  New Delhi (originally planned for Baghdad), March 7–12, 1983
8.  Harare, September 1–6, 1986
9.  Belgrade, September 4–7, 1989
10.  Jakarta, September 1–6, 1992
11.  Cartagena de Indias, October 18–20, 1995

12.  Durban, September 2–3, 1998
13.  Kuala Lumpur, February 20–25, 2003
14.  Havana, September 15–16, 2006
15.  Sharm El Sheikh, July 11–16, 2009
16.  Kish Island, 2012

## Secretaries-General






















































Between summits, the Non-Aligned Movement is run by the secretary-general elected at last summit meeting. As a considerable part of the movement's work is undertaken at the United Nations in New York, the chair country's ambassador to the UN is expected to devote time and effort to matters concerning the Non-Aligned Movement. A Co-ordinating Bureau, also based at the UN, is the main instrument for directing the work of the movement's task forces, committees and working groups.















































Secretaries-General of the Non-Aligned Movement				
Name	Country	Party	From	To
Josip Broz Tito	 Yugoslavia	League of Communists of Yugoslavia	1961	1964
Gamal Abdel Nasser	 United Arab Republic	Arab Socialist Union	1964	1970
Kenneth Kaunda	 Zambia	United National Independence Party	1970	1973
Houari Boumédiène	 Algeria	Revolutionary Council	1973	1976
William Gopallawa	 Sri Lanka	<i>Independent</i>	1976	1978
Junius Richard Jayawardene		United National Party	1978	1979
Fidel Castro	 Cuba	Communist Party of Cuba	1979	1983
N. Sanjiva Reddy	 India	Janata Party	1983	
Zail Singh		Congress Party	1983	1986
Robert Mugabe	 Zimbabwe	ZANU-PF	1986	1989
Janez Drnovšek	 Yugoslavia	<i>Independent</i>	1989	1990
Borisav Jović		Socialist Party of Serbia	1990	1991
Stjepan (Stipe) Mesić		Croatian Democratic Union	1991	
Branko Kostić		Democratic Party of Socialists of Montenegro	1991	1992
Dobrica Ćosić <sup>[citation needed]</sup>		Socialist Party of Serbia	1992	
Suharto	 Indonesia	Partai Golongan Karya	1992	1995
Ernesto Samper Pizano	 Colombia	Colombian Liberal Party	1995	1998
Andrés Pastrana Arango		Colombian Conservative Party	1998	
Nelson Mandela	 South Africa	African National Congress	1998	1999
Thabo Mbeki		African National Congress	1999	2003
Mahathir bin Mohammad	 Malaysia	United Malays National Organisation	2003	
Abdullah Ahmad Badawi		United Malays National Organisation	2003	2006
Fidel Castro <sup>[24]</sup>	 Cuba	Communist Party of Cuba	2006	2008
Raúl Castro		Communist Party of Cuba	2008	2009
Hosni Mubarak	 Egypt	National Democratic Party	14 July 2009	present

## Members

Member states of the Non-Aligned Movement (2009). Light blue states have observer status

1.  Afghanistan
2.  Algeria
3.  Angola

4.  Antigua and Barbuda
5.  Bahamas
6.  Bahrain
7.  Bangladesh
8.  Barbados
9.  Belarus
10.  Belize
11.  Benin
12.  Bhutan
13.  Bolivia
14.  Botswana
15.  Burma (Myanmar)
16.  Brunei
17.  Burkina Faso
18.  Burundi
19.  Cambodia
20.  Cameroon
21.  Cape Verde
22.  Central African Republic
23.  Chad
24.  Chile
25.  Colombia
26.  Comoros
27.  Congo
28.  Côte d'Ivoire
29.  Cuba
30.  Democratic Republic of the Congo
31.  Djibouti
32.  Dominica
33.  Dominican Republic
34.  Ecuador
35.  Egypt
36.  Equatorial Guinea
37.  Eritrea
38.  Ethiopia
39.  Gabon
40.  Gambia
41.  Ghana
42.  Grenada
43.  Guatemala
44.  Guinea
45.  Guinea-Bissau
46.  Guyana
47.  Haiti
48.  Honduras
49.  India
50.  Indonesia
51.  Iran
52.  Iraq
53.  Jamaica
54.  Jordan
55.  Kenya
56.  Kuwait

57.  Laos
58.  Lebanon
59.  Lesotho
60.  Liberia
61.  Libya
62.  Madagascar
63.  Malawi
64.  Malaysia
65.  Maldives
66.  Mali
67.  Mauritania
68.  Mauritius
69.  Mongolia
70.  Morocco
71.  Mozambique
72.  Namibia
73.  Nepal
74.  Nicaragua
75.  Niger
76.  Nigeria
77.  North Korea
78.  Oman
79.  Pakistan
80.  Palestine
81.  Panama
82.  Papua New Guinea
83.  Peru
84.  Philippines
85.  Qatar
86.  Rwanda
87.  Saint Lucia
88.  Saint Kitts and Nevis
89.  Saint Vincent and the Grenadines
90.  São Tomé and Príncipe
91.  Saudi Arabia
92.  Senegal
93.  Seychelles
94.  Sierra Leone
95.  Singapore
96.  Somalia
97.  South Africa
98.  Sri Lanka
99.  Sudan
100.  Suriname
101.  Swaziland
102.  Syria
103.  Tanzania
104.  Thailand
105.  Timor-Leste
106.  Togo
107.  Trinidad and Tobago
108.  Tunisia
109.  Turkmenistan

- 110.  Uganda
- 111.  United Arab Emirates
- 112.  Uzbekistan
- 113.  Vanuatu
- 114.  Venezuela
- 115.  Vietnam
- 116.  Yemen
- 117.  Zambia
- 118.  Zimbabwe

### Southern African Development Community

The **Southern African Development Community (SADC)** is an inter-governmental organization headquartered in Gaborone, Botswana. Its goal is to further socio-economic cooperation and integration as well as political and security cooperation among 15 southern African states. It complements the role of the African Union.

#### History

The origins of SADC lie in the 1960s and 1970s, when the leaders of majority-ruled countries and national liberation movements coordinated their political, diplomatic and military struggles to bring an end to colonial and white-minority rule in southern Africa. The immediate forerunner of the political and security cooperation leg of today's SADC was the informal Front Line States (FLS) grouping. It was formed in 1980.

The Southern African Development Coordination Conference (SADCC) was the forerunner of the socio-economic cooperation leg of today's SADC. The adoption by nine majority-ruled southern African countries of the Lusaka declaration on 1 April 1980 paved the way for the formal establishment of SADCC in April 1980.

Membership of the FLS and SADCC sometimes differed.

SADCC was transformed into SADC on 17 August 1992, with the adoption by the founding members of SADCC and newly independent Namibia of the Windhoek declaration and treaty establishing SADC. The 1992 SADC provided for both socio-economic cooperation and political and security cooperation. In reality, the FLS was dissolved only in 1994, after South Africa's first democratic elections. Subsequent efforts to place political and security cooperation on a firm institutional footing under SADC's umbrella failed.

On 14 August 2001, the 1992 SADC treaty was amended. The amendment heralded the overhaul of the structures, policies and procedures of SADC, a process which is ongoing. One of the changes is that political and security cooperation is institutionalised in the Organ on Politics, Defence and Security (OPDS). One of the principal SADC bodies, it is subject to the oversight of the organisation's supreme body, the Summit, which comprises the heads of state or government.












In 2008, the SADC agreed to establish a free trade zone with the East African Community (EAC) and the Common Market of Eastern and Southern Africa (COMESA) including all members of each of the organizations.

Since 2000 began the formation of the SADC Free trade area with the participation of the SACU countries (South Africa, Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia, and Swaziland). Next to join were Mauritius, Zimbabwe, and Madagascar. In 2008 joined Malawi, Mozambique, Tanzania, and Zambia bringing the total number of SADC FTA members to 12. Angola, DR Congo and Seychelles are not yet participating.


#### Member states

SADC has 15 member states, one of whose membership is currently suspended:

-  Angola
-  Botswana
-  Democratic Republic of the Congo – since 8 September 1997

-  Lesotho
-  Malawi
-  Mauritius – since 28 August 1995
-  Mozambique
-  Namibia – since 31 March 1990 (since independence)
-  Swaziland
-  Tanzania
-  Zambia
-  Zimbabwe
-  South Africa – since 30 August 1994
-  Seychelles – also previously been a member of SADC from 8 September 1997 until 1 July 2004 then joined again in 2008.

### Suspended

-  Madagascar – Membership currently suspended after the coup d'état led by the former mayor of Antananarivo Andry Rajoelina. Challenges facing member countries

SADC countries face many social, development, economic, trade, education, health, diplomatic, defence, security and political challenges. Some of these challenges cannot be tackled effectively by individual members. Cattle diseases and organised-crime gangs know no boundaries. War in one country can suck in its neighbours and damage their economies. The sustainable development that trade could bring is threatened by the existence of different product standards and tariff regimes, weak customs infrastructure and bad roads. The socio-economic and political and security cooperation aims of SADC are equally wide-ranging, and intended to address the various common challenges. <sup>[2]</sup>

### Aims of the SADC

SADC's aims are set out in different sources. The sources include the treaty establishing the organisation (SADC treaty); various protocols (other SADC treaties, such as the corruption protocol, the firearms protocol, the OPDS protocol, the health protocol and the education protocol); development and cooperation plans such as the Regional Indicative Strategic Development Plan (RISDP) and the Strategic Indicative Plan of the Organ (SIPO); and declarations such as those on HIV and AIDS and food security. Not all of the pre-2001 treaties and plans have been harmonised with the more detailed and recent plans such as the RISDP and SIPO.

In some areas, mere coordination of national activities and policies is the aim of cooperation. In others, the member states aim at more far-reaching forms of cooperation. For example, on foreign policy the main aim is coordination and cooperation, but in terms of trade and economic policy, a tighter coordination is in progress with a view to one day establishing a common market with common regulatory institutions.

### SADC structure and decision-making procedures

The organisation has eight principal bodies:

- The Summit, comprising heads of state or heads of government, are at the top.
- Organ on Politics, Defense and Security (OPDS), the
- Council of Ministers,
- Tribunal,
- SADC National Committees (SNCs), and the
- Secretariat.

Except for the Tribunal (based in Windhoek, Namibia), SNCs and Secretariat, decision-making is by consensus.

### **SADC in practice**

SADC is a weak organisation; it is underresourced, and the member states are not happy to give it the powers that they agreed to give it when they launched the overhaul of the organisation in 2001

One significant challenge is that member states also participate in other regional economic cooperation schemes and regional political and security cooperation schemes that may compete with or undermine SADC's aims. For example, South Africa and Botswana both belong to the Southern Africa Customs Union, Zambia is a part of the Common Market for Eastern and Southern Africa, and Tanzania is a member of the East African Community.

On Wednesday October 22, 2008, SADC joined with the Common Market for Eastern and Southern Africa and the East African Community to form the African Free Trade Zone. The leaders of the three trading blocs agreed to create a single free trade zone, the African Free Trade Zone, consisting of 26 countries with a GDP of an estimated \$624bn (£382.9bn). It is hoped the African Free Trade Zone agreement would ease access to markets within the zone and end problems arising from the fact that several of the member countries belong to multiple groups.

The African Free Trade Zone effective is the realization of a dream more than a hundred years in the making, a trade zone spanning the whole African continent from Cape to Cairo and envisioned by Cecil Rhodes and other British imperialists in the 1890s. The only difference is that the African Free Trade Zone is the creation of African Countries for the mutual benefit and development of its member countries. The idea is a free trade zone spanning the whole continent from the Cape to Cairo (Cape Town in the Republic of South Africa to Cairo in Egypt).

In addition to eliminating duplicative membership and the problem member states also participating in other regional economic cooperation schemes and regional political and security cooperation schemes that may compete with or undermine each other, the African Free Trade Zone further aims to strengthen the bloc's bargaining power when negotiating international deals.

Analysts believe that the African Free Trade Zone agreement will help intra-regional trade and boost growth.

### **Flag**

The flag of the organization came from the people of the member countries; a competition was held to design a new flag and in 1995 the new design was chosen. The new flag has a navy blue field with a green circle in the centre, and the SADC logo is in the centre of the green circle. In the official description of the flag, the blue symbolises the sky and ocean that bring water and life, and the green represents the rich flora and fauna. The region's rich gold wealth is represented in the colour of the lettering. The flag was first used in the 1995 SADC Summit at the World Trade Centre in Johannesburg.

# NASS

### Introduction

There is no educational system that is silent on the values that are accepted and cherished by that society. Educational values in other words are behaviour change in all the domains of education that is the psychomotor, the cognitive and the affective. A skilled artisan or accountant with no sense of his position in society at the family level or at work or society in general is a social misfit and a drain to national wealth because of the need to either hospitalise him because he has AIDS, incarcerate him because he is a criminal and a danger to that society. A strong sense of belonging or identity, responsibility and accountability are the things that can be defined as patriotism. Economic giants today and in the past are and were the most patriotic. In Zimbabwe today the sense of belonging has eluded both young and old and this is due to the selfishness, greed and the collapse of the extended family due to western values. A culture of greed or a mafia and mercenary attitude pervades all sectors of the society in the banking, retailing, manufacturing and civil service. The need to change attitudes and the need to inculcate correct values is not only urgent but also imperative now and in the future.

### Nass-Definition

NASS can be defined, as civic educations designed to make all Zimbabweans who go through tertiary education become responsible citizens who are patriotic and can therefore be mobilised to participate in national development. **Civic education** involves teaching of the values that can be cherished by the society is typical of and in all educational systems and not a unique to Zimbabwe. Zimbabwe was the odd case in that it did not have this kind of emphasis in its education as much as Zimbabwe was the odd case in relation to national service.

### The meaning of National and Strategic Studies

National and strategic Studies is an initiative with the prime focus of moulding and refocusing Zimbabwean citizens in a desire to enable them to retain and cherish patriotism, self discipline, sovereignty and contribute to the development of the country in all respects of a Zimbabwe/ African environment. The NASS programme has been designed to produce a Zimbabwean citizen, college graduate, with a high level of knowledge and commitment to contribute to the development of the country by exercising

- Patriotism
- Professionalism
- Good behaviour
- A commitment to National Development

For the above attributes to be exercised, all Zimbabweans must be proud citizens, must be of paramount importance to the nation by contributing to the well being of Zimbabwe socially, politically, economically and otherwise.



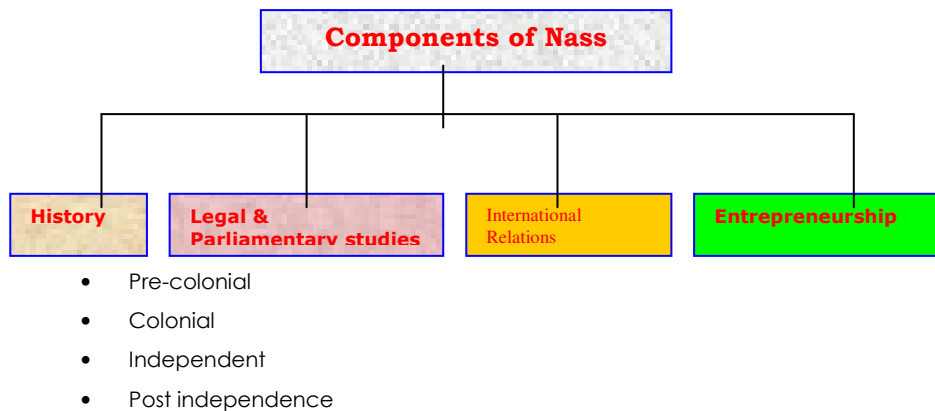
## Nass And The Future

The future of National And Strategic Studies is clear and beneficial that it will be a happy return of the future to have:

- An uncorrupted society
- A generation with the will to commit themselves to their country
- A Zimbabwe free of poverty as a result of Entrepreneurial Development and indigenisation
- A vibrant national cadre able to shrug off intrusions by imperialistic forces of any nature
- Solution to our own programmes /problem as a country and not wait for prescriptions from other wait
- A Zimbabwe -ideally sound
  - Build on collective effort
  - Bound by a desire to be us

### The purpose of Nass

Nass therefore is about positively changing or enhancing the attitude of the participants with respect to their national identity and with respect to translating the political gains of the second Chimurenga into economic gains of the third, fourth Chimurenga.

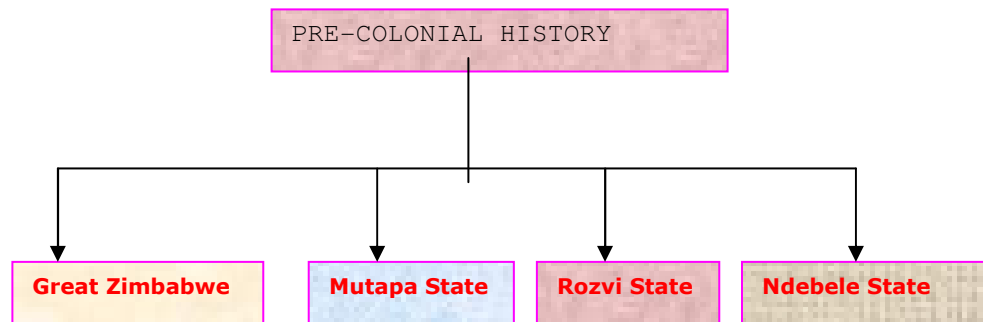


**A- Zimbabwe history and heritage** – is a module designed to enable the students to appreciate an understanding of the beginnings of Zimbabwe as a nation and the various indigenous resources that form our heritage. It seeks to create an awareness of the underlying factors that resulted in the present Zimbabwe.

**B- Legal And Parliamentary Affairs-** is a module designed to have an awareness of Zimbabwe's legal system, statutes and how these affect their existence as citizens.

**C- International relations-** is a module designed to enable students to have an understanding of the effects of International Relations and to effectively articulate Global issues and make a critical analysis of the role of International Organisations or institutions.

**C- Entrepreneurship and Development skills-** this module is designed to enable students to have knowledge and understand the need to be self-sufficient by developing their skills for entrepreneurship and subsequent removal of the employee mentality.



## **The Great Zimbabwe State- "which means House of stones"**

Was most powerful before the 14<sup>th</sup> century, which is 1500. It was called the State because it could raise an Army and forces the payment of tribute and was involved in international relations. The State was built by a group of people known as the Shona people who had much wealth in the form of livestock. The stone capital became known as the Great Zimbabwe, which became the centre of social, political, economical and religious. The king was called the Mambo.

## **Historical evidence**

The historians have the oral traditions to try to explain the history of the Great Zimbabwe State. However, there is little that we normally get from the oral traditions because the Shonas have no written records. Documentary evidence written during the Mutapa State by the Portuguese and records found in Arab writings have an account of the Changamire and Mutapa States. However, the archaeological evidence is there in the form of clothing found at the Great Zimbabwe and some of the evidence including bones, copper iron tools. Historians to show the social, economic and political activities of the people at Great Zimbabwe have used these. The structure at the ruins consists of 2 complexes " the acropolis" or temple area and the external enclosure, which consists of a large number of stone buildings. Exactions in the external enclosure yielded stone, glass, bead and brassware, seashells, ironware, iron axes and hoes.

## **Social and political organisations**

By 1200 a ruling class had emerged, which was strong enough to organise almost the whole population to build a high surrounding wall, made of granite blocks. The Great Zimbabwe rulers exercised power to a number of chiefdoms that paid tribute to the Mambo at Great Zimbabwe. Other chiefdoms may have been independent but connect through marriage and trade. The ruling class controlled the trade.

## **Purpose of the stone structure**

- Security
- Religion
- Prestige monument
- Occupy slave labour

## **Causes of the decline of the or collapse of the State**

The State had become overpopulated leading to a shortage of resources. There was increased emigration. Shortages of resources, that is salt, civil Wars, declining soil fertility and some dispute that Nyatsimba Mutota left Great Zimbabwe because he had failed to succeed and left to the north and formed the Mutapa State.

## **THE MUTAPA STATE**

The founder of the Mutapa State was Nyatsimba Mutota who left Great Zimbabwe in search of salt or after a succession dispute according to oral history. Mutota went to the Zambezi Valley where he defeated some

weak communities who were already settled there such as the Tavara or the Dzivaguru people. Mutota as a result earned the title "Munhumutapa" a praise name, which means Lord of Conquering. Before the succession dispute, King Chibatamatosi, Mutota's father had ordered Mutota to find salt. Prince Mutota travelled north leading a large Army. He built his capital a " Zimbabwe" on the slope of Chikato Hill near the Utete River. Part of this Zimbabwe remains to this day at the bottom of the escapement north of Guruve. Mutota formed an alliance with the Tavara High Priest, Dzivaguru. Upon the death of Mutota, his son, Nyanhehwe Matope took over and co-ruled with his half sister Nyamhita who occupied the district of Handa hence she is often referred to as Nyamhita Nehanda. The two ruled the Mutapa Empire stretching from the Angwa and Manyame Rivers, north to the Zambezi and west to the Musengezi and Mukumbura rivers.

### **Mutapa language and Customs**

The people had the same Shona language, customs and culture similar to the peoples of the Great Zimbabwe State. The term Shona was not used until the 19<sup>th</sup> century. Nowadays the term Shona is representative of a number of related dialects in Zimbabwe one of which is Katanga. They believed in a god whom they called 'Mwari' who is claimed to have spoken through the spirits of the ancestors and they listened carefully to spirit mediums, that is the Mondoros. Religious ceremonies were held to honour the spirit mediums where music dancing and feasting occurred (bira). The senior spirit mediums were Dzivaguru in the northeast, Nehanda in the central and Chaminuka in the west. The cultural level of the society was closely knit with the family being the nucleus of the society as well as being the foundation of the nation. The basis of this arrangement was a high degree of morality with crime, starvation, delinquency, prostitution, divorce and almost all known present day social ills being unknown. The law was highly developed to deal with cultural issues and less defined in terms of commerce. Criminals or murderers were even rehabilitated with the law seeking to reconcile the injured and the culprit and compensate the victim or his relatives in the case of murder. When a person was murdered life had to be paid by with life and invariably a young woman from the murderer's family had to be given to the victim's family. Inevitably this created a bond between the two considering that at birth or death there are things that no one could or can do except the relative of a woman.

### **The Mutapa Economy**

**The trade** with the Swahili and the Portuguese has some serious negative repercussions on the Mutapa State and its citizens. Firstly, it interfered with the local activities, especially agriculture. Labour available for farming was diverted, as people were required to engage in trade related activities seen during the rainy season. The traders expected the Mutapa people to hunt for ivory and mine for gold even during the rainy season when people were supposed to be busy with their farming. Secondly, the trade led to serious exploitation of the Mutapa people and their resources. The Mutapa laboured very hard to obtain ivory and gold; Activities, which were very dangerous and yet they got items not worth the labour and risk involved in terms of value. The Mutapa traded out their precious gold and ivory in ignorance, as they did not know their economic value. Thus they received worthless European products mainly consumer goods which were of no developmental value. Meanwhile, the trade depleted their ivory stock and gold reserves. Thirdly, upon realising that the Mutapas were not welcoming them the Portuguese decided to interfere with Mutapa politics. Through their agents, the degradador they infiltrated the society and began to assume position of authority in the land. They caused dispute for succession and managed to get their puppets like Gatsi Rusere and Mavura Mhande into power. This interference weakened the Mutapa's position and encouraged disputes and rebellions. They increased their demand for gold and ivory on the puppets and caused them to increase the tax burden upon their people. The people were compelled to trade with these foreigners and to pay tribute in the form of ivory, gold and Asian and European goods. The Mutapa lost favour with the people a thing, which encouraged breaks away. Dombo, the founder of the Rozvi State grabbed this opportunity and broke away and eventually

attacked and destroyed the Mutapa State. In addition, the guns, which the Mutapa obtained from the trade, encouraged Wars. The vassal chiefs equipped with guns felt strong enough to rebel against the Mutapa. Even individuals claimants to the throne used these guns to get to the throne. Thus they did not only lead to rebellions and break ways, but also to revolutions overthrowing the ruling individuals. The Portuguese themselves used force on several occasions to establish their trade. The Barreto Fernandez and Pereira expeditions were an attempt to colonise the Mutapa State. Through their agents, the Vashambadzi, the Portuguese and the Swahili were able to penetrate the Mutapas. Not only were they able to get to the hidden mines but they also put the people in a position of no choice but trade. The credits they got to the people bound and compelled them to trade to pay off the credits. The Portuguese mercenary agents the Achianda raided those who failed.

The Portuguese began to settle in the interior establishing trading posts like Sena and Tete. They then obtained land concessions from their Mutapa friends. Some got the land by tricky means. They began to engage in farming, opening maize and rice plantations (Prazeros). On these Prazos they enslaved the Mutapa people to work for them especially those that failed to meet their credit obligations. These settlers also got involved in womanising leading to emergence of a coloured race in the Mutapa. Their goods also encouraged.

Greed among the Mutapa people as others got wealthier while others remained poor. The rich African class exploited the poor, as they were required to hunt, mine and trade on their behalf. Lastly, the invasion of Muslim and Christian religions threatened the existence of traditional religions. The traders were also actively involved in the spreading of their religions and denouncing local religions and social systems. Father Silveira at one time succeeded in recruiting the Mutapa and his people for Christianity denouncing such traditional marriage systems especially polygamy.

### **Mining (Mutapa)**

The Mutapa mined for gold, iron, copper and silver. Copper was for the making of jewellery and for trade. Silver was for the Portuguese trade and was mined at Chikoa. Iron was mined mainly for making of iron tools for use by the Mutapa people in farming, hunting and for War. Gold was for making jewellery and for trade with the Swahili and the Portuguese. The demand was so high that even the King began to demand tribute in the gold and other goods obtainable through the gold trade with the Swahili and Portuguese. The mining was also a laborious and dangerous activity. The walls of mines could fall in anytime and yet the lighting system was poor. It was difficult to drain out water from the mines during the rainy season or upon reaching the water table. Traditionally people used to mine during the dry season but the Swahili and Portuguese forced the people to mine in summer because of their increased demand for gold. This interfered with other activities especially farming. Also in a bid to get more gold the Swahili and Portuguese entered the Mutapa and began to interfere with the Mutapa politics. They caused confusion in the State resulting in the weakening and decline of the State.

### **Hunting (Mutapa)**

In the Mutapa State hunting was a traditional practice as it was a source of meat and hides for clothing and trade. They hunted for both small and big game. In the hunting they used iron spears, arrows and knobkerries. The dog was an important hunting animal. They also used nets (mambure) and fibre string snares for trapping animals. Hunting was a man's activity and even the Mutapa hunted on occasions. Hunting however became more trade oriented with the increasing demand for ivory and skins. Men were required to pay tribute in the form of precious skins and ivory. This was a dangerous activity but the people were compelled by the tribute credit obligations to take the risk.

### **Tribute system (Mutapa)**

The Mutapa, like most African States, charged a loyalty tribute on its subjects, which was the only way the Mutapa could realise who was under her control and who had to be attacked. It was a way they were able to measure the extent of their authority. In the Mutapa there were various levels of tribute payment. Every Household had to pay tribute to the King through the village head. The villages then paid through the sub chiefs who in turn paid through the chiefs and provincial rulers. Also the defeated vassal chiefdoms had to pay tribute to the King; examples of such dominions included the Kings of Uteve, Barwe and Manyika.

### **Mutapa political structure**

The king or Mambo led the State; they had many advisors and Ministers to govern the State. Some of the emperors' wives were also officials, greeting visitors and handling their business and as members of his royal court they became very powerful. Munhumutapa, his wives and officials wore expensive jewellery and clothes made from cotton and silk. Most people wore skin aprons. A large Army was maintained which travelled long distance, patrolling and collecting taxes and cattle and brought new communities into the empire.

### **THE ROZWI STATE**

The State arose from the plundered wealth by the Rozwi under Changamire Dombo (1634) believed to be having been a powerful ruler. He was very wealthy and claimed that; that his father was a Mwari and his mother a virgin. The Rozwi capital was at Thabazikamambo near Bulawayo. By 1680 he was at his peak and his state was spread between the Zambezi and the Limpopo rivers and even into areas like Mozambique such as the Sena. The Rozwi Changamire received tribute from smaller chiefs. By 1830-1860 the State existed by name only.

### **Decline and collapse of the State**

The collapse of the Rozwi State was a result of Mfecane or "time of trouble" caused by Nguni tribes who had fled from Tshaka or broken away from the Zulu State in the present day Natal. Zwangendaba crossed the Limpopo with his group and fought the Rozwi ruler Chirisamuru. The State was further weakened when Kololo Sebitwane in 1836 fought and defeated the Rozwi. Mzilikazi turned west into Gaza and then north with his group and finished the remnants of the Rozwi State between 1837-1840.

### **THE NDEBELE STATE**

#### **Origin**

The Ndebele State was a product of the Mfecane. The Khumalo clan were a small dominion under the Ndwandwe of Zwide. Around 1817 Zwide killed Matshobana, chief of the Khumalo; accusing him of conspiring with the Mthethwa to fight the Ndwandwe. In his place his son Mzilikazi was made chief of the Khumalo clan. Mzilikazi and his Khumalo Warriors were part of the Ndwandwe Army which pursued Tshaka's Zulu regiments in 1818. At the Mhlatuse River battle Mzilikazi decided to change sides and he joined Tshaka as a way of avenging the death of his father against Zwide. Since Mzilikazi had voluntarily joined Tshaka, he was given some privileges. He was allowed to continue ruling his Khumalo people and remained in charge of the Khumalo Army. He was also made a general of Tshaka's armies.

### **Mzilikazi's Revolt 1821**

As a trusted induna and general, Mzilikazi carried out raids on behalf of Tshaka. He surrendered the booty obtained from these raids to Tshaka who then rewarded his general as he pleased. Mzilikazi felt that it was not fair to have to fight and take all War risks to enrich Tshaka. He felt that he and his Khumalo people could make it alone without Tshaka and become rich and powerful. He felt the need to labour to create his own State.

independent of Tshaka. Thus, in 1821 he went to raid a neighbouring Sotho tribe and collected a large booty, which he decided to keep it for himself. His own people advised him to hand over the booty or risk severe punishment from Tshaka, but he would not listen. Tshaka sent messengers to remind him of his obligations, but Mzilikazi ill treated the messengers instead and sent them back. Tshaka then sent an Army to punish the chief, but Mzilikazi beat off the expedition. A second Army was sent which defeated Mzilikazi and sent him fleeing with only three hundred soldiers, women and children.

### **Journey to Bulawayo (Ekuphumuleni 1822/23)**

From Zululand the Khumalo moved northwards attacking and raiding Sotho tribes they came into contact with, looting for cattle, women and children to strengthen their State. In about 1822/23 they reached the upper Olyphant River and settled in Nzundza area at a place they called Ekuphumuleni (a place of rest). Although it was a good raiding ground Ekuphumuleni was not suitable for permanent settlement. It was too close to Tshaka who was determined to punish Mzilikazi. The Pedi people nearby were also a threat to the Khumalo; furthermore the area was not good for the cattle especially after the 1823/24 droughts.

### **Emhlahlandlela 1826**

Between 1826 and 1830 the Khumalo, now called the Ndebele, settled in Northern Transvaal at a place called Emhlahlandlela. From here they carried out raids as far as Botswana, Lesotho and Zimbabwe to enlarge their State. The Sotho people nicknamed Mzilikazi's people 'Matabele – men of long shields', which the Ndebele adopted as a name for themselves. This was a good raiding and cattle rearing area. Also here Mzilikazi met the missionary, Robert Moffat at Kuraman Mission and the two became friends. However, it was still too near to Zululand and Dingane, who had succeeded Tshaka in 1828, and also wanted to punish Mzilikazi. In 1830 the Zulu Army attacked the Ndebele. The Khoisan, Kora and Kwena groups also bothered the Ndebele. The Rolong and Griqua Warriors who captured Ndebele cattle also raided them.

### **Mosega 1832**

The Ndebele then settled the headwaters of Morico in Hurutsheland in about 1832. Mosega was close to Kuraman and also a good cattle country. However, the Ndebele were attacked by Tswana-Griqua and Kora-Griqua force in 1834. In 1836 Potgieter's Boer attacked them and they decided to move on.

### **Crossing the Limpopo**

From Mosega the Ndebele split into two groups. The Induna, Gundwane Ndiweni that contained the Ndebele cattle, women and children led the first group. It also had most of Mzilikazi's sons including **Nkulumane** and **Lobengula**. The group took a direct route crossing the Motloutse and Shashe Rivers. They went to the Mzingwane valley which they followed until they came to a place near Matopo Hills in Western Zimbabwe. The second group under Mzilikazi assisted by senior Indunas including Maqhekani Sithole took a westward direction. They went to the Ngwato territory towards Lake Ngami on the edge of the Kalahari Desert. They then moved towards Zambia to raid the Kololo in Baloz. It was here that Mzilikazi heard of the installation of Nkulumane as King of the other group. Mzilikazi rushed to Matopo and had Ndiweni and other Indunas killed at Ntabayezinduna. The fate of Nkulumane is not known. Some say he was sent back to Zululand and others say that he was secretly killed.

### **Ndebele Sphere of Influence**

The Ndebele established their Headquarters in Western Zimbabwe at Bulawayo. From here they influenced the surrounding areas directly or indirectly. The sphere of influence could be divided into four zones: The area within 80km of Bulawayo was under the direct administration of the Ndebele settlement inhabited by the people who had come with Mzilikazi and the Rozvi people who had been assimilated into the Ndebele State. The second area was the areas around Bulawayo not under direct Ndebele administration but whom the Ndebele had defeated. These Shona and Kalanga elements paid tribute to the Ndebele kings. The third area included those parts of Zimbabwe, Botswana and South Africa, which had not been defeated but were

subject to occasional Ndebele raids. Lastly, was the Northeastern part of Zimbabwe never experienced any Ndebele raids. They only heard stories of the Ndebele but never came in contact with them. The area was too far from the Ndebele capital so the Army could not wonder that far without exhausting and weakening itself.

### **Ndebele Social System**

At Bulawayo the Ndebele State became divided into three social strata. The State had a caste system, which kept each group separate from the other. Intermarriage was not allowed to ensure purity especially of the highest clans. Each group had specific socio-economic roles commensurate with its social level and political power. On the top of the strata was the Zansi class, that is, the class that had come from Zululand with Mzilikazi. The original 300 Warriors, women and children who had fled from Zululand and their off springs. This group constituted the Khumalo class. These were aristocracy of the society. From the royal Khumalo class came all the kings and other Nguni elements occupied such top positions as Army generals and Indunaenkulu. Their royalty was not to be contaminated with intermarriages with lower classes. Any such unions produced off springs that did not qualify to be Zansi but were regarded to be of lower classes, after Zansi was the Enhla class. These were the Sotho and Tswana elements that had been absorbed before crossing the Limpopo. These could only rise to such positions as Indunas and advisors but were regarded as being lesser than the Zansi and hence could not occupy any top political or military posts. However they were regarded as being higher than the lower class the Hole. The Hole class was the lowest and servant/ commoner class in the society. This group constituted the Shona and Kalanga people that had been defeated and had adopted Ndebele custom, religion and language. They were distinct from the other group by their totems. Their totems were derived from names of animals (Shumba – Sibanda, Nzou – Ndlovu, Shoko – Ncube, Mhofu – Mpofu including Dube, Mpala, Nyoni, Nyathi, Siziba etc). This group being the lowest occupied the lowest servant position but however through merit and military performance could rise to being Indunas. Even though these groups were distinct and separate, together they made what became known as the Ndebele State. The State could have been incomplete without any one of these classes. They complemented each other and made a conglomerate State bringing together customs, religions, languages, economies and politics from their respective backgrounds. It is this socio-economic conglomerate, which became a formidable State which even the whites had to be contend with.

### **The Ndebele Economic Systems**

The economy of the Ndebele was a mixed economic system. Their main economic branches were pastoralism, raiding, tribute payment, cultivation and trade. They also had subsidiary economic Activities, which included pottery, basketry, smiting, and mat making, fishing, hunting and gathering. **Pastoralism**-the Ndebele kept a number of domestic animals including cattle, goats, pigs, sheep and donkeys. These animals were kept for their meat, milk, skins and draught power. Of these animals, cattle were the most important. In fact the State rested on cattle production. Raiding and tribute payment were done mainly as means of acquiring more cattle. Cattle were so important that they were only slaughtered during important occasions only such as the inxwala ceremony, death and wedding ceremonies and to appease ancestral spirits. Cattle were regarded as a permanent food source providing milk and meat, which were the major components of a Ndebele diet. Milk was consumed fresh or sour. Meat was consumed fresh or dried. Cattle were also a source of hides for making clothing and shields. They provided draught power for transportation (this was however a work for donkeys), pulling carts and sledges and even ridden upon. They were also important for payment of fines, tribute and lobola. They were lent to the poor (ukulagisa) to enable them to use for draught power and obtain milk or trade for goats and then raise their herd of cattle. The king to reward his Indunas and soldiers and also to feed the Army and visitors used them. Cattle were therefore central to the Ndebele economy and thus were regarded as a symbol of wealth. A man was measured by the size of his herd. Those who occupied high social and political positions were feared in the society because they had very large herds of cattle.

**Raiding**-Another important aspect of the Ndebele was raiding. Though more of a military activity / raiding was of great importance to the Ndebele State. It was a means to obtain more wealth for the State. It was a means to obtain cattle, grain and captives to expand and strengthen the State. The Ndebele State right from South Africa had grown around raiding. The majority of the population and wealth of the State had been acquired through raiding. Raiding was the main reason for the creation of a standing Army, which provided employment for most of the young and able-bodied men and women. The Ndebele raided Sotho

communities for cattle and captives. In Zimbabwe they raided Shona communities not only for cattle and captives but also for grain since cultivation was not very important in their society. **Tribute Payment**-this was also of Great economic significance in Ndebele Society. This was a way by which the subjects and citizens of the Ndebele Society thanked their king for the protection and safety provided by his armies. It was also a way they demonstrated their loyalty to his authority. Tribute payment was required from all Ndebele subjects whether under direct or indirect control. To avoid being raided vassal States and tribes had to pay tribute to the Ndebele King. This was to be in the form of cattle, grain and women. Like raiding it was a means to obtain cattle, grain and slaves and thus a means to strengthen the States economy. **Cultivation**-crop production though not pivotal to the economy was also an important aspect of the economy. It was not pivotal mainly because that State had grown in transit so there was not much time to develop a sedentary economy. They grew crops as millet, sorghum, rapoko, melons, beans and pumpkins. Crop production was important as a source of food to implement pastoralism. Millet and Sorghum were mainly for making isitshwala (sadza) to be consumed with meat, milk or vegetables. They were also important for the brewing of beer (utshwala), which was an important intoxicating drink in the society. The crops were also important for the payment of tribute and for trade. The old people, women and children mainly did crop cultivation since the men were in military service. **Trade** - was one of the economic activities of the Ndebele State. However it was not done on a wide scale. The Ndebele traded on a small scale with the Shona and the Whites of South Africa with the Shona they traded for iron tools mainly since they were not miners themselves. With the whites they traded mainly for guns. The Ndebele also had a rudimentary internal trade system. This involved barter trade among the Ndebele people themselves.

### **Subsidiary Economic Activities**

The Ndebele also had a number of subsidiary economic activities. These were mainly done as pass time activities to supplement the main economic bases. They practised pottery using mud as well as basketry and mat making using reeds and grass woven with wood fibre. Some went fishing using nets, mats and fishing spears. Hunting and gathering were also very important in this society. They hunted for small and large game using spears and dogs. This was mainly a man's job. Women were mainly responsible for gathering for wild fruits, insects, roots and tubers. Men also gathered wild honey.

### **Ndebele Religion**

The Ndebele religion was mainly a by-product of their migration. It had aspects of all the tribe, which made it up. Firstly they believed in a creator God (Nkulunkulu) and the idea reinforced by the Sotho/Tswana belief in a creator God (Mlimu). Also they practised ancestral worship a concept they had brought from Zululand and reinforced by the Shona worship of Mudzimu – Madhlozi in Ndebele. These could be contacted through spirit mediums. They also adopted the Venda rainmaking religion, the Njelele cult with headquarters at Matopo. This was similar to the Ndebele first fruit ceremony inxwala when they thanked the ancestors and God for rain and farm products. In rainmaking they asked the ancestors and God for rain. In all these religious activities the king was the Chief Priest since he was regarded as god himself. His royalty had been bestowed on him by the gods and the ancestors therefore he was bound to be closer to them spiritually. When the whites came they introduced Christianity to the Ndebele. However, the Ndebele did not turn to Christianity openly until the death of Lobengula, and the 1896 defeat by the whites.

### **Ndebele Political System**

The Ndebele State had a centralised political system. All power rested on the king who ruled the State a complex network of Indunas (chiefs) and enforced his power and maintained peace and order through a powerful military machine. The king was top most figures with absolute power. He raised the amabhuto



(soldiers), co-ordinated military strategy, distributed captives and cattle, allocated land, got rid of opponents, called on the ancestors for rain and organised and oversaw the annual inxwala (first fruits) ceremonies. He was the Commander in General of the forces, the Chief Judge and Chief Priest. Like Tshaka he had power over life and death of his subjects. His decision was final. The King however ruled with the help of an advisory Council. The Council was divided into two Houses, the Mphakhathi and Zikhulu. The Umphakhathi was the higher body consisting of selected and trusted indunas. It discussed more delicate issues affecting the State. It sat in judgement and discussed relations with foreigners. However, the King was powerful enough to dominate the Mphakhathi. The second much lower House was the iZikhulu. This constituted all other chiefs and men of Great wisdom and thus was a much larger House. It discussed general issues affecting the State.

The State was divided into four main provinces led by indunas eNkulu. Each province was divided into smaller units each under an induna (chief). The chief's roles included rounding up suspected criminals or rebels using a police gang, limited distribution of captives and State cattle, and taking part in the King's Advisory Council.

The Ndebele State had a large standing Army whose main tasks were raiding, collecting tribute and herding the King's cattle when not raiding. The soldiers were in age regiments stationed in regimentary towns after the Zulu fashion. The youngest the Majaha was stationed at Bulawayo. Each town was headed by an induna who was both a political and military leader. The towns took the name of the regiment for example, Imbizo, Mahlokohloko, Mhlahlandlela and many others.

### **The Lineage System**

In the Ndebele State the Khumalo where the ruling supposed to come from his House. At the death of the King, the eldest son with his eldest wife of royal lineage was supposed to take over. Sons of wives not royal lineage were not eligible for Kingship as they were regarded as being of commoner blood. Thus when Mzilikazi died in 1869 there was a problem over succession as Nkulumane the eligible heir was nowhere to be found. Lobengula, the eldest then, had a mother from the Enhla class, therefore did not qualify to inherit the throne. It was not until 1871 that Lobengula through bribery and alliance with the Nyangas of the land managed to take over the throne.

## **THE PARTITION & COLONISATION OF AFRICA**

### **Reasons for the partition / colonisation**

#### **Economic Reasons**

Need for raw materials to feed the new industries of Europe e.g. groundnuts for oil, rubber, cotton, minerals etc, need for new markets to absorb European manufactured goods, which had over flooded the European market, to profitably invest their surplus capital, investing in new business in Europe was becoming less and less profitable, governments wanted to create employment for their population which had been affected by the industrialisation.

#### **Political & Prestige Reasons**

The struggle for supremacy in Europe extended in the scramble for colonies and colonies became a yardstick used to measure power / strength of the mother country. The more colonies a country had the more it was feared in Europe. Wealth and power were expressed in for the number of colonies. Even power states such as Italy who had nothing to sell took up colonies because of this, the defeat of France in the 1870 Franco-Prussian War. The humiliation suffered by France after the 1870 Franco-Prussian War forced her to take up colonies in Africa (even useless desert lands) to prove that she was still powerful and to save face i.e. she wanted to

restore her national pride. Some European countries with no capital to invest in industries demanding raw materials just entered the race in order to be left out i.e. for prestige reasons e.g. Italy, Spain.

### **Strategic Reasons**

Africa was colonised for the convenience of European states. Europeans colonised Africa to safe guard their possessions and trade routes e.g. the British occupation of the Cape and Egypt was to safeguard her routes to India through which her ships sailed from the Mediterranean Sea into India and the Suez Canal respectively

### **Humanitarian reasons**

The Europeans claimed that occupation of Africa would enforce the abolition of the trade in humans i.e. slave trade, Missionary work i.e. the White Man's burden when Africa resisted Christianity, the Missionaries sought help from their governments in Europe to annex land and thus protect their mission stations and work. Annexation they hoped would make the people governable and obedient. Missionaries attracted their governments to the lands they had invaded first, they also facilitated the signing of treaties through translation and persuading the Kings who trusted them to sign treaties through translation and persuading the Kings who trusted them to sign treaties e.g. J.S. Moffat and Reverend Charles Helm in the Ndebele state.

### **Adventures, Hunters & Explorers**

They toured Africa and wrote exaggerated and glittering reports about Africa's wealth. This forced the capitalist class to encourage their governments to colonise Africa. Some hunters e.g. Baines signed concessions with Lobengula. Livingstone encouraged the occupation of Malawi to stop Ngoni slave Traders & Activities.

### **Chartered Companies e.g. Royal Niger**

Co & the BSAC were profit making companies who were given mandates by their governments to annex territories of profitable areas and governed them as business enterprises, Traders called on their governments to take over African states in order to restore "law and Order" in conflict ridden areas so their trading activities would not be disturbed.

### **Technological Development**

Europe led to the invention and improvement of steamboats, which could penetrate in the interior of Africa using rivers enabling them to gain access to inland territories and avoiding hostile territories. The steamboats were also used to carry large quantities of rifles, machine guns, ammunition and gunpowder used to conquer African Kingdoms.

Modern guns/weapons gave the Europeans an enormous advantage over the Africans who were mainly using backward weapons that technological advantage in terms of weapons encouraged the Europeans to rush to Africa, technological improvement also resulted in improved medicine e.g. quinine which enabled Europeans settle in Africa without being wiped out by malaria.

### **Berlin Conference of 1884-1885**

Acted as a catalyst in the occupation of Africa as it resulted in a rush for colonies. A conference which was called and facilitated by Otto Von Bismarck, the Germany Chancellor to discuss how Europeans states divide Africa without fighting each other for the colonies. The purpose of the Berlin Conference was to try and stop Wars against each other in Europe since the industrial revolution in Europe had created shortages of raw materials, hence the meeting was held to iron out the possibilities of future conflicts amongst themselves.

### **Parties to the Berlin conference**

German, Belgium, England, France, Italy, Portugal, Spain & Holland.

### **Terms/ Agreement**

Effective occupation to be done as proof of any claim laid on an African state, all major rivers in Africa were declared open international waterways, signatories agreed to stop the slave trade. King Leopold II of Belgium recognised as the rightful ruler of Congo Free State (D.R.C), a map of Africa was drawn to show the areas unclaimed and claimed by the various European nations, signatories agreed to stamp out the slave trade. **NB:** The African Chiefs whose continent was the subjects of discussion were not invited to the Berlin Conference to decide the fate of their continent.

### **Contents of protectorate agreements between European Powers and African chiefs**

Parties to the agreement included the African chief and the European commercial company, subjugation or surrender of title to land, the location of the land, its size and the general description, surrender of all political, judicial and political power, creation of monopoly trade area, duration of agreement, that is, in infinity or forever, the rewards for the chiefs and the people, alleged or claimed improvements of their lives through European civilisation and the surrender of all mineral and other resources.

### **Effects of the conference**

It led to the scramble for Africa by European states as it had laid the rules of the game, which the states were eager to put in practice. The nations rushed to Africa to prove their claim through conquest, signing of treaties and effective occupation. Effective occupation included sending of administrators, soldiers, and citizens to settle down and raising their flags. Nations even prove claims over area if they had previously not been interested in; this was done to prevent rivals from claiming them. By 1900 all African states except Ethiopia and Liberia had lost their independence.

### **Results of colonisation**

Colonisation resulted in the loss of political power and new government destruction of traditional and political structures. The Native Commissioner took over and replaced chiefs by company loyalists, expropriation of resources, exploitation of resources, new laws, urbanization, loss of land, monetary economy, taxes, racial discrimination and the destruction of traditional instructions and cultural imperialism.

### **MISSIONARIES IN ZIMBABWE**

#### **Role played by missionaries**

Education through establishment of schools, medicine and hospital establishment, Trade-some of them were traders and encouraged legitimate commerce, Architecture – new types of buildings e.g. the rectangular grass thatched Houses at Inyathi mission latter copied by the Ndebele King, was different from the thatched hut later on buildings made of brick, repairing weapons for the Africans e.g. the British loading gun, Improved Agriculture through new farming techniques, Building of roads, Dressing -clothes and other Europeans products introduced and they symbolised civilization, new religion and culture, whose code of conduct called for the abandoning of polygamy and civil Wars or raiding, facilitated the signing of treaties , Rulers and Europeans i.e. colonialists used them as a road to colonize the country , Directed their home governments to occupy the areas where they wanted to spread the word e.g. John Smith Moffat hated the Ndebele state and that it will, be a blessing to the world when they are broken up. He encouraged the BSAC to destroy the Ndebele state in order to loosen the grip on political converts. Some of the British missionaries who worked in Zimbabwe are: Robert Moffat, Charles Helm, and John Smith. Moffat, Francois Carnegie, Father Robert Laws, etc

### **CRIMES AGAINST HUMANITY**

Slavery is the highest level of degrading another human being. Slavery is as ancient as human existence. The practice was pronounced under the Roman Empire and at that time it also assumed its commercial undertones. This practice was perfected by the former Roman colonies in Europe when they enslaved Africa. Never in the History of mankind were such atrocities, insensitivity, and cruelty and inhumanity perpetrated by human beings upon other human beings. Slavery was the crudest method of exploiting other human beings and in its wake came colonisation, which by definition is slavery with a humane face. The latter like slavery leads to the exploitation of other man by other means other than brute force and so also does neo-colonialism.

It is not possible under The United Nations Charter for a nation to unilaterally attack or annex the territory of another state and where this has happened of late as when Iraq attacked Kuwait the UN unanimously agreed to reverse the annexure through force of arms. To colonise another state is therefore the highest form of state irresponsibility. The USA under false claims of existence of weapons of mass destruction attacked Iraq in 2003 and there was a Global outcry against the War, which could have been, prolonged in 2003 and there was a Global outcry against the War, which could have been, prolonged colonisation had the Iraq resistance not made continued occupation untenable. Colonisation nevertheless took place many centuries before the UN came into existence but that does not make colonisation any less a crime against humanity. Colonisation was perpetrated by the very nations that were vociferously opposed to the Iraq colonisation of Kuwait and yet many serious human rights violations were perpetrated by the very same colonial powers in colonising Africa and other parts of the world. In Tasmania Australia, British settlers wiped out the aborigines on the island to the last man. The Spanish conquistadors demolished whole empires and civilizations in the Americas.

### SLAVERY IN AFRICA

The discovery of gold and silver and agricultural potential in South America or in the Americas created the need for a disciplined workforce, inability of the local or native Red-Indian population to withstand organised disciplined labour and this made African labour a necessary alternative, existence of disciplined agricultural and industrial culture in Africa also made African slaves attractive, existence of disciplined agricultural and industrial culture in Africa also made African slaves attractive, indigenous or Red-Indians' inability to withstand European diseases, for example, small pox, syphilis, gonorrhoea, etc., The existence of a greedy and gullible or naive chieftainship in Africa, which captured and sold its own kith and kin for a bottle of firewater that is gin. Commercial activity therefore contributed much to the consolidation of slavery. The trade in Europe did not provide sufficient profit because of the problem of exchange values. But the trade with unindustrialised countries in Africa and America was more profitable because of the use values, this system of trade was a system of robbery based on plunder, piracy and slavery and colonial conquest, to consolidate accumulation or profit in England, the joint stock company was devised and several of this new economic tool were formed, e.g. the Adventurous Russia company and the Africa company. According to Nassau, a well known academic of the time, the objectives of the Africa company were, "... to kidnap or purchase and work to death the natives of Africa without mercy." The Eastland Company had the monopoly and right to trade with the European hinterland. The Levan Company in which Queen Elizabeth I was a major shareholder became the East Indian Company.

The Fuggier Company in Germany was first a merchant company and later became a bank and financed all Germany Wars of the period, the Fuggier Company in return for financing War was paid through the form of trading concessions, colonial land and through revenue from colonial mines, as contract with Latin America or South America increased, the company turned to Africa for cheap labour, It was the nearest continent with a

population used to organise labour, which was also disciplined in many respects. The Utrecht Treaty of 1713 gave English Merchants the right to supply South America with 5 000 slaves every year and a special company was formed to supply these slaves. Most of the gold and products from the plantations from South America ended up British towns. The continued enslavement of African peoples between 1646 and 1680 resulted in 70 000 slaves being taken to South America. However, only 46 000 survived the translocation. The slave trade was part of the triangular trade between Europe Africa and South America. This trade was very profitable to the European companies and the African Royal company which was the slave company paid a dividend of 300% despite loss half the "goods/cargo" that's despite the death of more than half the slaves en route to the Americas. There is therefore a co-relation between Europe's expansion/development and slave labour from Africa. The methods used by the companies especially British firms, was to capture other countries' export markets through colonisation, protectionism and the destruction of the native people of Africa. Europe therefore did not undertake its industrial revolution without the plunder, the enslavement and the destruction of the native people of Africa

### **SLAVERY & COLONISATION**

Colonialism was a product of European merchants or European commerce. The former (the merchants) later supported and financed the political institutions or their governments in their Wars of conquest and colonisation and they also participated in policy making. Colonisation therefore was an economic necessity.

African slavery had existed in Europe from about the 16<sup>th</sup> century but the need to exploit the wealth of South America saw slavery reaching a climax in the 18<sup>th</sup> century. Slavery however, came to an end when it stopped serving the purposes and interests of European commerce. The dynamics of European production and exchange changed and no longer required slave labour. Britain banned slavery in 1807. Slavery however, continued or even grew after this banning. In 1833 slavery was banned but it did not die until a 100 years later and to the shame lingers on in places like the Sudan. Slavery was not abolished because Europe had repented of its wickedness but because commerce could not benefit as much from this evil practice. Once slavery was abolished, it was replaced with colonisation. The commercial revolution in the 16<sup>th</sup> century expanded trade beyond Europe and this created a conservation class of merchants and landlords' commercial merchants were a class, which could not fully satisfy their accumulation potential in Europe so they turned to foreign markets. Primitive accumulation in Europe, that is, getting rich through violence and other dishonest means, was extended and practiced in foreign lands through colonisation. The merchants and conquerors destroyed several civilizations in Africa e.g. the Ashanti Kingdom and Aztec Civilization in Central America. Earlier, five crusades had been wedged or undertaken in the Middle East and this almost destroyed the Arab civilization. The crusades were less about religion and more about plunder and theft and robbery. The amount of wealth stolen in this manner although substantial could not last long and the result was to exploit the mines and the agricultural potential in Africa and South America. In South America where more gold and silver than in Africa existed, the mines could not be exploited using local so they resorted to stealing people from Africa.

### **THE HISTORY OF ZIMBABWE 1885 – 1965**

#### **The occupation of Zimbabwe**

Cecil Rhodes went to South Africa at the age of seventeen suffering from weak lungs with the hope to benefit from Africa's clean atmosphere. He joined his brother who was growing cotton in Natal. In 1868 when diamond claims had become one of the richest mine owners. He became wealthy and powerful that he spearheaded the formation of such mining companies as the De Beers, Rothschild's and Consolidated Gold

Fields. Rhodes was an advocate of British imperialism. He believed in the superiority of the British race and felt that Britain had the duty to spread civilisation to all parts of the world. He dreamt of Britain colonising the whole of Africa and constructing a railway running from Cape to Cairo. He thus became determined to use his wealth and power to make sure that his dream was realised. He took it upon himself to lead the colonisation of Africa by Britain. It is important to note that Zimbabwe had many contacts with whites long before the event of Imperialism. This was through mercantilist trade with the Swahili and with the Portuguese. During the 19<sup>th</sup> century many explorers and scouts travelled to the Zimbabwean plateau. These people made numerous reports on their experiences in this land and had them publicised in Europe. It was these reports, which, like most of Africa, attracted Imperialists to Zimbabwe. In fact there was a mini-scramble for Zimbabwe during the 19<sup>th</sup> Century. Most important were the Germans from South West Africa, Boers, from the Transvaal, the Portuguese from Mozambique and the British from the Cape Colony.

### **Reasons for the occupation**

- Zimbabwe was colonised, like the rest of Africa, out of the prevailing spirit of imperialism. It was out of a momentum, which Europeans found difficult to stop. The colonisers might not have thought fully of what to expect, but just grabbed the land to stop others from doing so. Out of popular imperialism Zimbabwe might have been colonised.
- Also Zimbabwe, like the rest of Africa was colonised for her economic potential as a source of raw materials and a potential market for European manufactured goods. She was thought to be harbouring a lot of mineral wealth. The Boers and the British alike hoped for a second Rand from the Zimbabwean plateau.
- Zimbabwe was also colonised for her good climate and fertile soils. Most of the country had a cool climate and a high rainfall especially in the highveld. This added to fertile soil made it to be of great farming potential to the whites that hoped to produce tropical industrial crops. Also the climate was good enough for European habitation especially the coolness.
- The British colonised Zimbabwe as part of their plan to prevent the Boers of the Transvaal from taking it. They also wanted to encircle the Transvaal to stop her from having a seacoast. After the discovery of diamonds at Kimberly, the Boers felt strong enough that they no longer needed a relationship with the Cape. They sought to expand northwards so as to be able to have a seaport and stop trading via the Cape. To stop this the British had to colonise the land north of the Transvaal and thus Zimbabwe was colonised.

### **How Zimbabwe was colonised**

The colonisation of Zimbabwe was a process, which began slowly during the day of Robert Moffat and progressed gradually up until the final occupation in 1890. Through the years the colonising process was characterised by a competition for this land between the Boers and the British. Here however, we are going to concentrate on the events after 1885. The colonising process was controlled and their guns were to be surrendered to the King and also that Rhodes would put notices in European newspapers telling white people to keep out of Matabeleland.

### **Step 1: the Grobler Treaty 1887**

This treaty was signed between Piet Grobler and King Lobengula in 1887, representing the Boer republic or the Transvaal. The treaty was also known as the "Friendship treaty". It stipulated that there would be everlasting peace between the Ndebele and the Boer Republics. It was a lie –there was never going to be everlasting peace since they had deceived Lobengula. The treaty recognised Lobengula as the paramount Chief / King (this statement was true/genuine because Lobengula was the ruling King who had conquered the other States) and was supposed to be an ally from then onward. The treaty committed Lobengula to provide military

assistance to Transvaal or to the Boers whenever asked (in the face of the British threat) (it was not a balanced statement because the Boers were not made to provide any assistance –a sign of selfishness) they were only interested in their own interests/hidden agendas, there was to be a permanent representative of Transvaal in Bulawayo-(but they did not ask Lobengula to send his representatives to the Transvaal) and Lobengula was to protect Boers who visited Zimbabwe. Lobengula was illiterate, he could not identify whom a Boer was / but no clause allowed Lobengula to send his people to the Transvaal under the Boer's protection. King Lobengula was required to catch and repatriate all criminals who escaped from the Transvaal. Hunters and adventurers would be allowed into Lobengula's territory without hindrance. The Boer Republic would appoint a representative who would stay in Lobengula's Kingdom. Lobengula was not allowed to administer justice to the Boers in his Kingdom. The content of the whole treaty was in favour of the Boers. It gave nothing in return to Lobengula for his concessions.

### **Step 2: The Moffat Treaty (Feb 1888)**

The British were greatly surprised to learn of the Boer success, so Rhodes decided to act quickly and persuaded Lobengula to withdraw the Gobbler treaty. Rhodes decided to send a missionary by the name Rev. John Smith Moffat to go and ask Lobengula to drop or cancel the Gobbler treaty. The Rev. John Smith Moffat was aware of Rhodes's intentions of grabbing Zimbabwe by cheating so was behind the British evil motives as well even if he was a missionary who was supposed to be a spiritual man who should have been honest. Moffat succeeded in persuading Lobengula to cancel the Gobbler Treaty and entered into a new agreement with the British. The repudiation of the Gobbler treaty by Lobengula was done under pressure from the British rivals such as the Boers. Terms of the treaty: Lobengula agreed to be a friend of the British queen and promised not to enter into any agreement without the knowledge and consent of the British High Commissioner at the Cape. Lobengula hoped to gain British protection. Lobengula had entered into this agreement because he had regarded Moffat as an old friend, however, little did he know that Moffat was no longer a real friend to the Ndebele whom he now regarded "as miserable people and thought it would be a blessing to the world when the Ndebele are destroyed or broken up" Rhodes was not happy with Moffat Treaty and decided to come up with a new idea that led to the Rudd Concession. However the main essence of this treaty could be analysed as follows; the British wanted to colonise Zimbabwe because of the abundance of raw materials and other resources, he wanted to stop the Boers from having a seaport to the north of the Limpopo, he wanted to realise his imperialistic dream of colonising the whole of Africa from Cape to Cairo, he also wanted to stop the Boers from grabbing the territory between the Limpopo and the Zambezi ahead of the British.

### **Step 3 Rudd Concessions 1888 (October)**

It is also referred to as the Mineral Concession. The Treaty was signed between Charles Rudd and Lobengula because the Moffat Treaty, which opened a way to the north, did still not satisfy Rhodes. He also thought that Lobengula would change his mind or cancel the Treaty if approached by other competitors. So to be more secure he sent three men powerful delegation to Lobengula to negotiate a mineral concession. The delegation was led by Charles Rudd who was an old friend to Cecil John Rhodes since their days at the Oxford University was therefore, an embodiment/ admirer of Rhodes's self-interest. The second one was Rotchford Maguire, he was a lawyer and his legal expertise in the legal language was going to be useful in tricking Lobengula. The third member was Francis Thompson. He was nicknamed "Matabele" because he was fluent in the Nguni Languages Ndebele included and had a perfect knowledge of the Ndebele customs and traditions. His presence therefore, meant to influence Lobengula to sign the Treaty. However, Lobengula did not want to meet this delegation and let alone sign the agreement. It took the delegation 6 weeks to meet Lobengula and also the bribery of his most senior indunas Lotshe and Sikombo during negotiations was clear signs that Lobengula was backtracking for the Rudd Concession. During negotiations Rudd lied to Lobengula that not more than 10 men will be brought to Matabeleland and assured Lobengula that their weapons would be surrendered to the Ndebele King when they arrive in Zimbabwe. On the strengths of such empty words and at the advice of Rev. Charles Helm, Lotshe and Sikombo, Lobengula put an X mark on this document. By putting the X on the document Lobengula signed away his political and economic power.

According to the concession Lobengula was to receive with his heirs and successors 'a monthly pension of 100 Pounds. The King was to be supplied with 1000 Rifles and 100 000 rounds of ammunition and a gunboat to patrol the Zambezi or 500 Pound instead'. He in return granted the whites 'complete and exclusive charge over all metals and minerals in my land ---- together with full power to do all thins they may deem necessary ---- to procure the same --- and undertake to grant no concessions of land or mining rights without consulting Rhodes'.

Lobengula had been advised that the only way to get rid of these vultures souring over his vulnerable State was to grant one of them a concession and this one was to make it its business to keep out others. Lobengula was made also to believe that Rhodes' group was the best selection. Thus out of keeping peace with the whites he consented against his will and the will of his young Warriors who wanted the whites driven out by force. He had to listen to the advice of his trusted indunas and friends thinking that they were genuine yet they were on Rhode's pay roll. The legal language used during the discussions and on the document was beyond the poor King's understanding. He had to make do with a white interpreter who also had interests in the outcome of the deliberations. He thus signed not knowing what it "deem necessary," meant for him and his people. The money and guns promised to Lobengula were accepted with the hope of using them to strengthen the State. Little did Lobengula know that they were just baits to lure the fish. These promises some of which never came (the gunboat never came and was actually meant for British to use or to keep out Portuguese) were not at all equivalent to what Lobengula had given out in economic and developmental value.

### **The British South Africa Company (B.S.A.C) and the Charter 1889**

With the Rudd Concession, Rhodes quickly formed a company, the British South African Company, to operate under and use in the negotiations with the British government for a colonising charter. He then proceeded to London for negotiations. In Britain he faced opposition from Philanthropists believed that only Britain not a company should colonise Zimbabwe. A company, they feared, would exploit the Africans but Britain would develop the country for the advantage of local people. The other groups feared that the country was going to create a tax burden on the taxpayer. Rhodes convinced the government that he would not need the taxpayer's money since rich mining companies such as the De Beers, Rothschilds and the Consolidated Gold Fields supported him. He also bribed senior officials in the British government to get his way through. The Charter gave Rhodes and the BSAC power to make treaties, promulgate laws, preserve peace, maintain a police force and acquire new concessions, to make roads, railways, harbours and undertake public works, to own or charter ships, engage with all the intention and ability to Act but helplessly bound by the fear of the repercussions of such move.

### **Invasion and the occupation of Zimbabwe and the Pioneer column**

After the granting of the Charter in October 1889, Rhodes hurried to S.A. and gathered a gang of mercenaries, which he called the Pioneer Column. The group was made up of the 200 settler volunteers from 1000 applicants from all over Europe and S.A. They were supported by 500 troops. The group was promised 3000 acres and 15 gold claim mines. The leader of the Pioneer Column was Starr Jameson although Fredrick Selous guided the settlers because of his knowledge of the country as a hunter. It was decided to enter the country along the eastern borders of the Ndebele and march into Mashonaland so as to avoid a direct clash with Ndebele Army. In June 1890 the Pioneer Column crossed the Limpopo River and arrived at fort Tuli (Beitbridge). The Pioneer Column proceeded northwards and arrived at Fort Victoria (Masvingo) in august 1890. From there on they further proceeded northwards and arrived at Fort Charter. On 12 September 1890 the Pioneer column finally arrived at Fort Salisbury and quickly raised their Union Jack Flag, and started pegging off large tracts of land using horsebacks.



### **White Settlement in Mashonaland**

Upon reaching Mashonaland, the settlers, did not take long to establish themselves. They pegged large farms on which tents were hurriedly put up to provide temporary home. Solid Houses of bricks soon replaced these. Towns began to take shape as Houses were built along neatly laid out streets. Africans in these areas soon found themselves squatting on white farms. They were given two choices, either to move or pay for being allowed to remain on the land. They paid either by providing cheap labour for the whites in their mining and farming or by growing crops and paying the white in the form of grain or cattle. This was encouraged by most of the settlers since they had not yet engaged in full time farming. These squatters were levied a number of taxes by these white farm owners.

Many of the settlers began searching for gold and other precious metals. Where these were found mines were established and shafts sunk. However, very little gold was found. Most of the mines they took were former Shona mines in their trade with the Portuguese. Moreover, African labour was required in these mines and the Shona found themselves providing mining labour. They tried to resist by hiding the mines but with little success. The settlers negotiated a separate Treaty on the 14<sup>th</sup> of September 1890 with the Manyika Chief, Mutasa, in which he had granted mineral rights and also permitted the stationing of a white resident and a police force in his area. Other treaties had also been signed with the Shona Chiefs in the area between the Sabi and Odzi Rivers. These treaties greatly challenged Lobengula's claim that he ruled all the Shona people. It thus weakened the Rudd Concession whose power was based in this claim. Lobengula and his Ndebele people could do nothing to stop the whites. In desperation, Lobengula granted land and mineral rights to a Johannesburg businessman in an effort to weaken Rhodes' position. However, Rhodes knew about the transaction and bought the concession from Lippert thus strengthening his position.

### **The 1893 Anglo-Ndebele War (the War of dispossession)**

The causes of the 1893 War between the whites and the Ndebele were borne in the relationship that existed between the two groups. On the other hand Ndebeles' wanted the whites out of Mashonaland while on the other hand the whites wanted the Ndebele nation destroyed. The whites wanted the Ndebele nation destroyed mainly because:

#### **Causes**

The Ndebele nation was a living example of African independence and self rule which challenged their claim that African could not rule themselves. The Ndebele Nation lay on the direct link between Salisbury and Mafeking South Africa. The Ndebele Nation could be sitting on rich gold deposits, which they hoped for. The whites eyed the Ndebele cattle, land and labour resources. Ndebele imps were occasionally invading Mashonaland thus disrupting white farming and mining Activities. Destroying the Ndebele was going to make Rhodes famous in Europe since it was regarded as a formidable African power and anyone to destroy it would be a hero. Generally expansion into Matabeleland would widen the whites' economic horizon since they had not got much in Mashonaland. Some were already contemplating pulling out.

The Ndebele wanted the whites out of Mashonaland, which they regarded as their traditional raiding ground. This was an attempt to repossess the Shona who they had been dispossessed. Also the Shona were becoming disloyal to the Ndebele King some even stopped paying their annual tribute. Each side however feared the other and did not want to appear the aggressor. They tried to contain and restrain their ambitions hoping however for a chance to pounce on the other. It may also be said that they also hoped for a way to solve their differences amicably and reach a reasonable and acceptable compromise. This compromise to the Ndebele would mean being allowed to continue raiding the Shona. However this could not be reached

without offending the whites. To the whites the compromise meant a temporary arrangement where they would regard the Ndebele as their equal while they stealthily entered, Matabeleland and had eventually established their control without bloodshed. A situation where the Ndebele would accept a protectorate status like Swaziland, Lesotho and Botswana. A tentative compromise reached was the creation of a boundary between Matabeleland and the area under company rule. Matabeleland side was not to cross this boundary. The Ndebele imps were not to wonder across this line while white hunters and explorers were also not to cross into the Ndebele land. However, this was difficult for the Ndebele since the Shona were on the other side of the line. Moreover Lobengula was failing to restrain the young soldiers who had no respect for the whites and wanted them moved by force. Occasionally they wandered across the line. The Shona also became un-loyal to the Ndebele and he could not help but want to punish them. Also, the whites really never meant to observe this boundary. It was really a trap to find an excuse to attack the Ndebele knowing how much they depended on the Shona. White hunters and explorers crossed the line at will. Moreover, the boundary was constantly shifting towards Matabeleland.

### **The Victoria Incident**

The events, which led to the final confrontation between the Ndebele and white settlers, occurred in the Masvingo (Victoria) district. Some Shona leaders thought that with white settler occupation of their areas, Ndebele raids had ended. Some of them even stopped paying their annual tribute to Lobengula. Lobengula punished several Shona leaders for this. In 1891, Chiefs such as Nemakonde and Chivi were actually killed by Lobengula. These Acts were not acceptable to white settlers because they frightened the Shona who were their main source of cheap labour to work in farms and mines. Following the killing of the Chiefs, Jameson pleaded with Lobengula to keep his army under strict control to prevent further occurrences. Lobengula however assured Jameson that the whites had nothing to fear, but his position regarding the Shona remained unchanged. They were his subjects and he had to punish them whenever they defied his authority. In 1892 a series of raids occurred in the Masvingo area, which was a potentially wealthy agricultural, ranching and mining region. In May 1893 some men under headman Gomala between Tuli and Fort Victoria, cut and carried away about 500 yards of the telegraph wire, possibly to make snares. Gomala was ordered to either hand over the culprits or pay a fine in the form of cattle. He paid in cattle belonging to Lobengula who demanded their immediate return. Jameson returned the cattle. Another Headman, Bere, 15 miles west of Masvingo, took cattle belonging to Lobengula. Lobengula decided that the Shona in the Victoria district had to be taught a lesson. A raiding Army was despatched under the command of Manyawo assisted by the young Commander, Mgandani. The force consisted of 3 000 young Warriors (amajaha) Manyawo and Mgandani were given strict orders to avoid clashes with white people carrying out their mission.

The expedition left Bulawayo in June, and Jameson and Lendy, a magistrate at Fort Victoria, were informed of the purpose of the invasion. However, Jameson's telegram and Lendy's letters were delivered after the trouble had already started, thus undermining Lobengula's diplomatic efforts to prevent a War with the whites. On 9 July, Ndebele Warriors were seen burning homes, killing men and driving away women and girls in the Bere, Zimuto and other areas surrounding Fort Victoria. Farm and mine labourers were also attacked and hundreds of white settlers owned cattle were driven away. The district's economic activities were brought to a standstill and many Shona people were either taking to the hills or streaming towards the little town centre of Masvingo. The leaders of the expedition demanded that they be handed over for punishment but Lendy would not agree. Jameson, at Salisbury, decided to come and see for himself. He gave orders to Lendy to demand the return of white cattle and the immediate withdrawal of the expedition or use of force if they did not comply. The small Police force at Fort Victoria was supplemented with 400 volunteers in preparation.

On 14 July, Lobengula's letter to Lendy arrived and was handed over by a messenger escorted by Manyawo, Mgandani and other leaders. They demanded the handing over of Shona refugees but again Lendy refused. Jameson himself arrived on 17 July and held an Indaba (meeting) with the leaders of the raiding expedition the following day. He told Manyawo and Mgandani that no refugees would be handed over and ordered them to lead their Army away across the border immediately. Jameson also warned that force would be used if they did not comply. Mgandani also vowed that they would be driven if need be. In fact, Jameson had made up his mind that the Ndebele would be driven by force. He ordered Lendy to follow with a mounted patrol after two hours to see to it that the orders were complied with. Lendy's mounted patrol rode towards the west at about 2.30 pm. Unfortunately the rear part of the Ndebele party, under Mgandani, was still with the area slowly marching westwards. Lendy caught up with them and concluded that Mgandani was defying Jameson's orders. Somebody fired a shot, possibly one of Lendy's men, although it was alleged that the shot came from the Ndebele. In the resultant skirmish, Mgandani and eleven of his group were killed. The rest of the Ndebele fled.

Encouraged by Lendy's easy victory the whites demanded full-scale War to destroy the Ndebele State once and for all. Jameson shared this view and told Rhodes and the High Commissioner. Jameson also told Lobengula his version of what had happened and demanded compensation. He warned that any such event in the future would lead to War. Lobengula believed Jameson and promised to pay the damages. Lobengula thus informed the High Commissioner that he was not going to pay even though he still wished to avoid War.

### **The 1893 War**

In the effort to prevent War, Lobengula sent an Ambassador to Queen Victoria. Jameson however was already preparing for War at Salisbury. Volunteers were being recruited and organised into a military force. He persuaded Rhodes and Henry Loch, the British High Commissioner to accept the necessity of a War to destroy the Ndebele. The Victoria Agreement was reached on 14 August 1893. This was a secret agreement between the BSAC (Jameson) and white settler volunteers under volunteer was entitled to 2 469 hectares of Ndebele land, 20 gold claims and a share of Lobengula's cattle. By September 700-800 volunteers registered for War.

Although also preparing for defending his land Lobengula was still willing to avoid War. He welcomed messages from the Queen and Secretary of State that there was going to be a War. In October 1893 Ripon the Secretary requested through the High Commissioner that Lobengula withdraw his forces and send Ambassadors to the Cape for negotiations. Lobengula agreed and sent his own brother Ingubungubu. Their cattle were taken by force. Those who resisted forced labour also had their cattle confiscated. In Matabeleland cattle were lost during the 1893 War. The whites went away with 209 070 cattle of Lobengula's 250 000 head leaving the Ndebele with only 40 930 heads of cattle. Of these, more were taken through taxation. Thus in 1896 the Africans were fighting to repossess their cattle and prevent more going to where others had gone. To the Ndebele cattle were the basis of the economy. Losing cattle in addition to losing their King and independence were humiliating. Cattle were a national pride, which could not be parted with so easily.

### **Effects of the War Anglo-Ndebele**

The major effect of the War was that it had destroyed the Ndebele Nation, which had been a thorn in the flesh of the settlers and an obstacle to their economic ventures. With the Ndebele gone, it was now possible to effectively carry out the whole colonising programme of Central Africa rule, which challenged their claim that African could not rule themselves. The Ndebele people for the first time were without a King. The whole nation its social and political structures were in fact, but the King was gone. Stories were put forward to try and tell the fact of Lobengula. The Whites had it that Lobengula died of small pox while trying to flee to Zambia. Some

said that he managed to reach Zambia and died there of old age. However, top secret among the Ndebele has it that he, upon realising his hopelessness ordered the people to surrender to the white men. He then ordered senior Indunas to kill him secretly and bury him privately at a place in Lupane district. The truth however is not clear now when looking back and after such a long time. The Whites may have coined up a story to hide their failure to capture Lobengula and to dispel fears among the Whites that if at large he may decide to attack by surprise. Also, even though the Ndebele have their top secret, it is difficult to accept it without substantial tangible historical evidence. The War drastically altered the Ndebele political and economic way of life. Politically, without a King, they were now subjected to colonial rule. Never in the past had they been servants to anyone. They now had to contend with having to pay tax to the whites whose administration was oppressive and biased in favour of the whites. They laboured in white farms and mines under the command of Shona policemen whom they despised as their former servants and dogs. The Army was destroyed and instead of raiding it had to contend with either farming or providing cheap labour in farms and mines. Economically, the Ndebele lost their major economic bases. For the first time they had to develop an agrarian economy. Raiding and receiving of tributes had ended and the Ndebele had been squeezed into the drought stricken Gwaai and Shangani reserves. Here they had no option but to engage into farming for subsistence and to source money to pay tax. The Ndebele had never been a farming people, but relied heavily on raiding and trade from Shona for grain. Like in Mashonaland, the Whites apportioned the best land among themselves and began prospecting for gold. In Matabeleland they went further to seize Ndebele cattle. Of the 250 000 Ndebele cattle only 40 930 head were left and of these many were still being taken through taxation.

### **Why did Lobengula Flee?**

After the defeat at Mbembezi, Lobengula realised that he was no match of the white and set his kraal on fire and began to flee northwards. However, upon reaching the Shangani he ordered his people to go back and surrender to the white. This paradox has been a puzzle, which historians have been seeking to solve. Lobengula might have decided to leave Bulawayo, hoping to establish a new capital somewhere in the north. The Ndebele had been a State born in the move seeking for a peaceful place to settle. Since whites had invaded Bulawayo, they had to leave it like they did many other places before. However, he might have changed his mind upon realising that the State had grown during its stay at Bulawayo. It was going to be difficult to round up and move such a huge community. When he moved it might have been himself and his fighting force but the rest of the community had not moved with him. He might have then killed himself out of frustration and not wanting to face the humiliation of seeing his people being servants of the whites. He also knew that the whites were not going to spare his life anyway.

## **THE FIRST CHIMURENGA / MVUKELA**

### **Causes of the 1<sup>st</sup> Chimurenga (1896-7)**

Another eye sore in the life of the Africans during these early days of colonialism was forced labour (Chibharo). The whites needed cheap labour in their farms and mines. However, working and living conditions in those work places were very bad. It was also more profitable to engage in farming than go for wage labour. As a result very few volunteered to go and work. At work places they worked under very hard conditions not fit for humans. The African Police constantly used the sjambok. The Ndebele did not like the idea of having to work under the supervision of Shona police whom they regarded as their servants. Thus in 1896 the two groups rose in protest against these deplorable working conditions and the idea of being forced to work against their will. To facilitate the recruitment of more labourers the whites came up with a series of taxes to bind the Africans. In 1894 for example, the hut tax was introduced. Every male adult was to pay tax amounting to 10 Shillings. Failure to pay this and other taxes was a crime, which saw one being arrested to go and work for the State. In 1895 officials collected 2 611 heads of cattle for hut tax. Africans lost a number of their cattle on account of

the tax. Those that tried to resist had their homes burnt and cattle seized by force and they being taken into forced labour. In 1896 the Africans were rising not only against the taxation but also the injustices, which went with it.

When the whites came and established themselves in Zimbabwe, they destroyed existing African economic systems in order to introduce their own. The Shona, for example, had enjoyed a lucrative external trade with the Portuguese. However, with the arrival of these settlers the trade died naturally. Thus when the Shona rose, it was in attempt to restore this trade with the Portuguese. The Ndebele also had enjoyed their raiding and tribute economic systems. When they were defeated in 1894, it meant that there was not going to be any raiding and they had to pay tribute to the whites instead of receiving tribute themselves. Thus when they rose in 1896 they were hoping to restore these lost activities.

Oppressive administration was one of the evils the Africans fought against in 1896. The Government promoted many injustices. The few and unqualified magistrates worked in their own interests to protect the whites at the expense of the black people. They conceded the white settlers' demands for cheap African labour and turned a blind eye to the many instances of cruelty towards the African servants. Punishment for whites in comparison to those dealt out to blacks was minimal. The law was thus biased in favour of the whites and any white had authority to exercise any justice he felt fit on Africans in such cases as desertion, stock theft, and quarrels with the bosses. The blacks were viewed not as subjects of human beings but as objects.

Maybe one of the major reasons for the uprisings was the issue of natural disasters. The Africans a bad omen does not befall a person or a nation unless inflicted by any angry spirit. When the people have wronged the ancestors, the spirits remove their protection on them and let evil spells terrorise the people. This will be a way the ancestors seek attention and appeasement from the living. Through the mediums, the spirits out the form of appeasement they so desire. Between 1894 and 1896 a number of natural disasters befell the whole of Zimbabwe. There was a severe drought throughout the land between 1895-96. The crops which survived the drought were destroyed by swarms of locusts the type which had not been seen on the land for a long time. Added to this a devastating of cattle officials in effort to eradicate the disease ordered that all cattle showing signs of rinder-pest be killed and people were not allowed to eat the meat of the dead cattle. This made the Africans even bitter. Natural disasters meant one thing to the Africans. It was an expression of Gods (Mwari/Mlimu)'s anger. Traditional religious authorities that blamed the whites for having angered Mwari/Mlimu confirmed this. They warned that unless the whites were fought and driven out of the land, the Africans would continue to suffer. The whites in their gold hunt an farming expeditions had defiled holy places of the land and thus the gods of the land were angry with their people for letting the whites remain on the land and continue to defile the land. They thus, through their mediums, called for the immediate expulsion of the whites, if they were to remove the curse. So when the Africans rose in 1896 it was in response to the call from the spirit to correct the wrong by forcefully driving out the whites.

### **The Role Played by Religion**

There were three main religious cults during the uprisings, that is, the Mwari and Njelele cults in Matabeleland and the Mhondoro cult in Mashonaland. These cults advised the people that the natural disasters on the land were an expression of Mwari and the ancestors' anger at white colonisation. They ordered the expulsion of the foreigners from Zimbabwe. Chief Priest Mulungulu whose shrines were at the Matopo Hills headed the Njelele cult. Mkwati whose headquarters were at Ntabazikamambo headed the Mwari cult. These worked closely with political and military leaders during the Ndebele revolt, organising and inspiring people to fight. When the rebellion spread to Mashonaland Mkwati extended his influence to this area as well. Shona chiefs maintained communication with the Mwari cult for religious advice towards the rebellion. Examples of such chiefs included Mashayamombe, Maromo, and Mutededza and even as far as the Sabi Valley area. Mkwati's Mwari cult was a unifying factor between the Shona and Ndebele during the rising, breaking the tribal barriers. Thus the two

groups being encouraged by the success or failure of the other. Mwari messengers such as Bonda and Tshiwa moved from one region to another spreading the Mwari messages. At the same time Mhondoro mediums were busy in Eastern Zimbabwe. The Kaguvi medium, Gumboreshumba worked with many chiefs: Chinamhora, Chikwaka, Nyandoro, Zvimba, Mangwende, Mashayamombe, Rusike, Seke and several others. The Nehanda medium, Charwe had influence in the Mazoe valley area upon such chiefs as Chiweshe, Hwata, Nyamweda, Negomo and Nyachuru.

- Religious leaders gave religious sanction to the risings.
- They helped in organising and mobilising people for action.
- Their network of spies and messengers spread War information between various paramount chiefs, encouraging people to fight, telling them of successes in other areas.
- They provided medicine to chiefs for various problems on their lands, that is, locusts, rinderpest, scabies and even success in the War.
- They kept the chiefs lighting War fires on top of mountains shouting the War cry "Chimurenga"
- The Nehanda and Kaguvi mediums warned people against not taking part in the rebellion. They told people not to touch or use white men's tools especially guns. They encouraged people, telling them that the bullets of the white men would turn into water.
- It was not until the capture of Gumboreshumba and Charwe in 1896 that the people began to surrender.

### **Results of the 1<sup>st</sup> Chimurenga**

Africans were defeated because of the inferior weapons that they used which included spears, shields, bows and arrows against the white men's machine guns, cannons and the seven pounders, disunity and disorganisation among the Africans also contributed to the defeat as some collaborated with the whites, leaders and spirit mediums were captured and killed thereby leaving the Africans directionless and leaderless, Africans lost faith in their spirit mediums in particular and their religion in general leading to many Africans being converted to Christianity. However, although the Africans were defeated, their efforts need to be recognised. It was the first time that they had fought a common enemy as a united people and a War of such magnitude. It was important in that it laid the foundation for future Wars of resistance that is the 2<sup>nd</sup> Chimurenga. The notable heroes of the first Chimurenga were people like Nehanda, Kaguvi, General Magwegwe and Mkwati of the Ndebele Army, Chief Chingaira, Mashonganyika, Muzambi, Maremba, Zvidembo, Mazhindi, Manyongori, Gunduza, Mvenuri and Gutu.

### **COMPANY OCCUPATION/ COLONIAL ADMINISTRATION FROM 1894-1923**

The period between 1880 to 1897 witnessed little economic development, acute shortage of labour, poor transport, the Anglo-Ndebele War, Jameson's raid, the 1<sup>st</sup> Chimurenga, rinderpest, locusts, among others. In 1898 there was a watershed in the economic and political development in the country as witnessed by the following: labour became more increasingly available as Africans accepted defeat, railway lines became a feature of the country, the company diverted its resources to farming and appreciated that there was no 2<sup>nd</sup> Rand in the country. The company was given a legislated Council, which comprised five executive members with the company administrator as the chairman. Also the 1<sup>st</sup> constitutional change took place in 1898 as a result of the 1<sup>st</sup> Chimurenga. Again in 1898 strife or friction started between the company and the settlers over the control of the country. The settlers accused the company of sacrificing their interest to the company's interests. In 1903 settler representatives in the legislative Council became equal to the company's representatives. In 1911 the settlers won the majority over the company. However, the company rule according to the Royal Charter was supposed to end in 1914 but the settlers voted for its continuation for another 10 years

because they were benefiting from the company's investments, however, the possible termination of the company rule precipitated a debate between company and the settlers. The 1<sup>st</sup> quarrel was over the control of the land; the 2<sup>nd</sup> was over the administrative deficits. In 1918 the judicial committee of the Council had ruled that the land belonged to the settlers and this was a settler victory. Company rule was to end in 1923. The country was either to join SA or was to obtain Responsible Government. In 1919 Charles Coghlan formed the Responsible Government Association, which became the Responsible Government Party to fight for the Responsible government, however the BSAC favoured a union with SA. A referendum was held on October 22, 1922 to decide on the responsible government or a Union with SA. On October 1, 1923 Southern Rhodesia attained responsible government.

- Conquest of the Ndebele in 1894 led to the government of Zimbabwe resulted in company rule under British responsibility.
- Leader Sir Jameson the 1<sup>st</sup> Administrator of the Colony and ruled with the assistance of a Legislative Assembly chosen by the Whites and Company.
- Africans could vote theoretically but practically they could not vote because many could not meet the qualifications, which included completion of form in English.
- Owning a House worth 75 pounds or an annual salary of 50 pounds property qualification doubled in 1912 when it appeared as many Africans could vote.
- Administration of colonies left in the hands of Native Commissioners, Magistrates of African Chiefs were left with no political power except collecting taxes and providing labour force.
- Settlers for failing to present settler's interests accused company Government.
- Company rule ended in 1923 and settlers were given option of joining South Africa or to form a responsible government and they chose the latter
- The Country came under settler rule on 1 October 1923.

### **Expropriation and exploitation of Resources**

The company introduced many laws to deprive Africans of their resources especially exploitation and control of African labour force.

#### **Land Grabbing**

1894 a Land Commission was set up to create reserves for the Ndebele. The commission created the 1<sup>st</sup> two reserves of Gwaai and Shangani, which form reserves, were rocky, infertile, and poor soil texture, in regards to poor soils. The fertile land was to be taken by settlers.

**Order in Council – 1898** Government ordered reserves to be created all over the country.

**1914 Land Commission** set to identify land suitable for reserves and settlers and in 1912 all people who had not moved to reserves areas were forced to pay extra tax of grazing fees.

**1930 Land Apportionment Act** was passed in order to divide land between whites and blacks, all good land reserved for whites and poor land to the Africans. Out of the 96 000 000 acres in the country share between a population of 1 081 000 Africans and 50 000 whites, land was allocated as follows:

- Approximately 48,1 million acres to whites
- Approximately 21,1 million acres to Africans
- Approximately 7 million acres was set aside for the purchases
- The rest of the land was declared land set aside for the unborn settlers and parks.
- The land Apportionment Act resulted in the following: -
- Africans became overcrowded in reserves
- Many Africans failed to get land.

- There was over grazing and soil erosion and the quality of African cattle was greatly reduced such that they failed to fetch high prices at the market.
- Poor crop yield destroyed competition between Africans and Settlers.
- Many Africans became poor and easily exploited.

### **Land Husbandry Act 1951**

Was passed in order to redress some of the negative effects of the LAA like soil erosion and poor crop yield so as to avoid an eminent hunger disaster. It was also used to force more Africans into reserves it reduced the number of acres and cattle owned by each family. Not more than 8 hectares and not more than 6 cattle. It also stipulated good farming methods e.g. contour digging. Agric extension officers were sent to teach Africans good farming methods.

### **Results**

More Africans failed to get land and migrated to towns, Workers also cut off from land, and Poverty increased nationalism, Expropriation of Cattle/Loss of Cattle, Settlers took cattle from Africans by force e.g. after defeat of the Ndebele in 1893-4 213 of their cattle were confiscated by BSAC and Cattle were also lost to the settlers through payment of tax and fines for petty offences.

### **Taxation System**

Introduced to milk African's wealth, in order to finance company activities. Also to force Africans to pay hut tax, dog tax, wife tax, grazing tax etc

### **Forced Labour**

Was introduced by settlers as a way of exploiting African labour force and force Africans to work, there was direct and indirect labour force, direct labour force involved settler's agents going into villages and recruiting labour force through force, the government introduced the Rhodesian native labour bureau in 1903 to recruit labour force from Southern Rhodesia, Northern Rhodesia and Nyasaland through force recruits were forced to sign long contracts and were worst paid, indirect forced labour included the following ,taxation in order to force people to work as they needed money to pay tax , Workers were controlled and forced to stay at work through a pass system, workers were controlled through compound system , workers were controlled through contract system and the master and servants ordinance who made it a criminal offence for workers to run away before the contract expired , the ticket system was used to make Africans work for longer periods.

### **How Africans expressed their discontentment against poor working conditions & ill treatment**

**In 1955** – there was the development or formation of the City Youth League by impatient young politicians such as George Nyandoro, James Chikerema, Edson Sithole, among others. It organised protest marches. **In 1957**- New ANC (African National Congress) was a merger between old ANC and the City Youth League led by Joshua Nkomo. It demanded majority rule. It organised mass resistance against the Land Husbandry Act urging Peasants not to cooperate with the settler government. In towns it organised mass protests and demonstrations.

**In 1960**-January-National Democratic Party (**NDP**) was formed with Michael Mawema as President holding on for Joshua Nkomo who was elected President and the leadership of the party consisted of Ndabanengi Sithole, Herbert Chitepo, Robert Mugabe, Bernard Chidzero, George Silundika, Jason Moyo, Leopold Takawira, Josiah Chinamano, and Enoch Dumbutshena etc. They demanded one-man one vote and majority rule, held mass demonstrations. **In 1961**-Constitution allowed the Blacks into Parliament and this divided the NDP, as some were happy with the constitution and others were not/rejected it as inadequate. NDP was banned in 1961. **In 1961**-Zimbabwe's African peoples Union (ZAPU) was formed with the same leadership as NDP. They encouraged Acts of arson and sabotage. Members agreed to remain as ZAPU even if it was banned. However, ZAPU split when Joshua Nkomo suspended some members, e.g. Malianga, Mugabe, Sithole and Takawira. **In 1963**-Zimbabwe African National Union (ZANU) was formed under the leadership of Ndabanengi Sithole and its first



Secretary was R.G. Mugabe. 1961 The NDP was banned and the same year ZAPU was formed in December. 1962 September ZAPU was banned. The People Caretaker Council was formed by the late Joshua Nkomo in. 1963. 1963 August ZANU is formed due to disillusionment with the politics of tolerance and accommodation and Ndabanengi Sithole leads the party. 1964 ZANU is banned and all prominent nationalists including the PCC leadership are either imprisoned or forced into exile. 1964 saw the beginning of violent African resistance to colonialism with many Acts of sabotage. Of note is the Action by self styled General Chedu who led 100 youths calling themselves the Zimbabwe Liberation Army. The same year ZANU recruited and trained the first armed resistance to colonialism and the Crocodile group drew first blood when they attacked a police station and killed a white farmer in Chimanimani (Melsetter). 1964 Ian Smith was elected premier of the settler government. 1965 November 11<sup>th</sup> Ian Smith's Rhodesia Front made a Unilateral Declaration of Independence. This made the country an illegal state and although Britain still claimed to be the legitimate ruler they failed to bring to justice the settler regime. At about the same time the little island of Anquila in the Pacific made a UDI and Britain did not hesitate to reign in the rebels. UD led the nationalists to adopt armed resistance as the first option to gain self-determination and the Smith regime went on an all campaign to stifle African aspirations and institutionalised apartheid or racial segregation as the system of governance and social and economic life. The same year a state of emergency was declared. Such a declaration had the effect of suspending some or all civil liberties and allowed the state to take extra judicial measures to deal with the crisis. What followed were many years of state terrorism and murder to which the Africans responded by intensifying the armed resistance – the second Chimurenga War. In short the Africans reacted through the following:

Dissertation, faking illness, go slow in order to reduce profits, Absenteeism, destruction of machinery and tools, accidental injury of bosses, nicknamed mines and Warned job seekers, forging, faking and altering passes to make them appear as if they finished contracts, also changed wages written on passes, strikes, demonstrations and killed NLB agents

### PROSECUTION OF THE WAR

By 1963 the Nationalist had secured external bases in independent African countries like Egypt, Tanzania and Zambia to train their armed wings. ZANU's armed wing became the Zimbabwe National Liberation Army (ZANLA) and ZAPU's armed wing became known as the Zimbabwe People's Revolutionary Army (ZIPRA). Training also took place outside Africa in places like Cuba, China and Russia. 1966 at Chinhoyi the first externally trained ZANLA combatants clashed with the security and all seven members of the group were killed. December Aboard a British Warship HMS Tiger the British government negotiates with the Rhodesians and offers them the choice of a broad based government and a referendum to decide the future of blacks. Smith rejected the offer. August ZIPRA in alliance with the South African National Congress's armed wing Umkhonto Wesizwe deployed four groups of 20 combatants each group. The majority of combatants were killed in and around Wankie district. Rhodesia's air force began to violate Zambian airspace and another large group of about 150 combatants was deployed by the alliance and again was decimated. The South African government in response sent troops into Rhodesia and the Smith government passed the law and Order Maintenance Amendment Bill – 7 September 1967. The law provided for a death sentence on any one caught with arms of War. In October; the British premier Harold Wilson convenes another conference on another Warship HMS Fearless and Smith again rejects the proposals. Late 1969 / early 1970 the Front for the liberation of Mozambique fighting the Portuguese in Mozambique formed an alliance with ZANLA and with more experience they provided training and logistical support which proved invaluable and led to the opening of the eastern front. Mass mobilisation became the preferred tool of the armed resistance and this met with Great success. Rhodesia and Portugal began joint operations in 1968. Dambaza Chikerema, Nathan Shamuraira and others break from ZAPU and form a separate armed resistance organisation called the Front for the Liberation of Zimbabwe (FROLIZI), citing the need to circumvent what they perceived as tribal limitations within ZANU and ZAPU. The group gradually fizzled out and the leadership either joined ZANU or went back to Rhodesia. 1971 / 1972 The British present proposals known as the Pearce Proposals, which among other things had fifty-year framework for majority rule and an end to racial discrimination. Lord Pearce was sent to conduct the referendum and in December of that year ZANU and ZAPU arrange the formation of the African National Congress under Bishop Abel Muzorewa to oppose the proposals and this they successfully do. December ZANLA scores military successes with the attack on Alternate farm in Centenary. 1971 / 1972 the keeps or cantonment camps – Nazi style so called protected villages are introduced in order to deny guerrillas access to

food and a political base from the rural peasants. 1973 Muzorewa claims the ANC as his brainchild and negotiates with Ian Smith and agrees to conditions similar to those rejected in the Pearce Commission. April in a coup in Portugal General Espinoza deposed the premier Salazar and brought immediate independence to Mozambique, Angola and Guinea Bissau. John Vorster, the South Africa's Boer premier with Zambia's President Kenneth Kaunda initiated Détente policy of accommodation, which on Vorster party was to neutralise the armed struggle by promoting internal reactionary African nationalists in Zimbabwe. Muzorewa; Nkomo and Sithole are flown from prison in Rhodesia to Lusaka and are forced to sign the declaration of unity by Kaunda on pain of losing Front line States support. Except for Joshua Nkomo the rest of the signatories were not genuine African leaders: Chierema signed for the non-existent FROLIZI and Sithole had declared while on trail in Salisbury that he had no connection with terrorist and subversives in ZANLA with the death / assassination of Herbert Chitepo on 18 March 1975 in Zambia which led to the arrest of many ZANU leaders. It was during this period that the Mgagao Declaration in Tanzania was made – if we cannot live as free man then we would rather die as free man. This set the tone for continued armed resistance by ZANLA and the document put the signatories to the Declaration of Unity on the side of the Smith regime. The imprisoned leaders then appointed Robert Mugabe as the provisional leader of the party. Chitepo was the ZANU chairman and became the chairman of Dare Rechimurenga an organisation formed after the banning and jailing of the nationalists leaders in 1964 and his task was to prosecute the War while the leadership was in prison. 1974 internal rivalry rock both ZANU and ZAPU. In ZANU a group calling themselves 'Vashandi led by such people as Rugare Gumbo, Henry Hamadziripi among others cause major headaches for the party. December the OAU demand that ZANLA and ZIPRA unite and the Zimbabwe People's Army (ZIPA) is formed with a joint command of eighteen shared equally and the War picks up momentum in Gaza and Manica provinces on the ZANLA front. March 1976, Ian Smith and Joshua Nkomo separate peace negotiations and as a result of mounting criticism of these talks by African leaders especially Julius Nyerere and Samora Machel and following Smith's no majority rule in a thousand years speech Nkomo discontinued talks with Smith. 1976 March, American secretary of state Henry Kissinger initiates the Geneva talks. ZANU and ZAPU from the Patriotic front to oppose the talks. The talks are adjourned in December and never resume. The joint command and ZIPA also collapse during that year. 1976 September 26 Smith announces acceptance of majority rule as long as the Army and police remain under white control and began to negotiate with the internal black collaborators or those who had abandoned the armed struggle were opposed to it e.g. Ndabanengi Sithole, Abel Muzorewa and Chief Chirau. In 1976 Ian Smith made bombing raids on camps in Mozambique, Rhodesians killed many refugees and guerrillas at Chimoio and Nyadzonya in Mozambique and Freedom camp Mulungu and Chifombo in Zambia. On 3 March 1978 the so-called Internal Settlement was reached between anti-War and reactionary black groups in Rhodesia. April 1979 the ANC's Bishop Muzorewa was elected prime Minister in sham elections and temporarily the **Zimbabwe-Rhodesia** hybrid state existed and it was not recognised by any state except South Africa. It was during this period that some of the most gruesome murders were perpetrated against refugees and the armed resistance with the authority and concurrence of Bishop Abel Muzorewa's government. 1979 October the British under International pressure convened the Lancaster House talks. The parties to the talks were the British government, the Patriotic Front (ZANU and ZAPU) and the internal group Muzorewa's ANC and Smith's Rhodesia Front. The talks could not reconcile the demands of the parties especially on land but both groups' gains hope that they would win and be able to maintain their claims and positions from a legalized position.

### Post Independence Developments (1980)

1980 March 1 under internationally supervised elections, Muzorewa won **three** seats in parliament, ZANU (PF) swept the board with **57 seats** out of the 80 common seats and ZAPU (PF) got **20 seats** from all of Matabeleland and ZANU –Ndonga got **one** seat. Independence saw many unrepentant whites emigrating to New Zealand, Australia, and Britain etc where they continue to reminisce nostalgically about how Britain sold them out. On 18 April 1980 Zimbabwe became an independent state with Robert Mugabe as premier. The new prime Minister formed a government of national unity and offered Joshua Nkomo the position of President a titular or ceremonial head of the state position but he declined to accept although several ministries were headed by his other fellow ZAPU colleagues and the whites also headed several key ministries. 1980 Notorious security units of the Smith regime flee to South Africa and carry out Acts of sabotage like blowing up air force planes. 1981 Some former ZIPRA units rebelled at Entumbane in Bulawayo and other places and the new Army quickly brings the rebellion under control. Massive arms caches belonging to ZIPRA and which were supposed to have been surrendered to the new Army are discovered and ZAPU properties with caches are confiscated by the state and ZAPU is removed from the government of national unity. In 1982 some former ZIPRA elements went to the bush and for five years waged an armed insurrection in which many people of Shona extraction were killed in Matabeleland and the Midlands died at the hands of dissidents as these rebels come to be called in follow up military action by units of the Zimbabwean Army, many more civilians are killed. The apartheid South African regime takes advantage of the dissident problem and its agents and saboteurs and against provocateurs is apprehended in Zimbabwe. South Africa unleashes a War of military destabilisation of all frontline states with rebel movements RENAMO in Mozambique and UNITA in Angola wrecking havoc to the economies of all Frontline states. 1987 December 12 after protracted negotiations spearheaded by Zimbabwe's first non-executive President Mr. Canaan Banana, a unity agreement is signed between ZANU PF and ZAPU PF. A new party ZANU PF is created and Joshua Nkomo became a co-vice President with Simon Muzenda. All dissident Activity stops and they are incorporated into society and no charges to be preferred against them and similarly

no charges are preferred against any member of the Fifth Brigade. 1980 saw the end of all formal or legal racial segregation but this evil and immoral practice continued and exists unabated to date. The new government made strides to correct the colonial evils in the following areas; -

- Universal free primary and secondary education
- Free medical and health care
- Policy of reconciliation towards the former settler colonialists to which they have to date spurned.
- Land distribution under the willing buyer basis
- Indigenisation – enabling the native Africans to own and control business.
- Expanding trade with the region and the world at large.

1981 Zimbabwe Conference on Reconstruction (ZIMCORD) was convened and donors pledged about one and half Billion USA \$ in aid and loans. 1986 The five-year economic development plan is launched in an attempt to restructure the economy to meet the needs of the whole population instead of the needs of a few settlers. 1991 Following a severe drought and pressure from western donors and the Bretton Woods Financial Institutions the government adopts the foreign initiated Structural Adjustment Plan. The Programme required Zimbabwe to liberalise trade, that is allow free movement of goods from outside, restrict or cut government expenditure in health, education and defence, and evaluate or allow the local currency to float. Serious economic problems begin to develop and come to head by 1996. 1998 due to ESAP food rioting took place in the major towns due to the negative effects of ESAP. 1998 August the Zimbabwe Defence Forces are deployed to the DRC to help the beleaguered Kabila regime. 1998 November Nearing the end of the restrictive 20 – year non compulsory acquisition of land clause in the Lancaster agreement, a Land Donor Conference is organised and many foreign donors pledge to assist Zimbabwe but not a cent is remitted by the end of 1999. 1999 The labour leadership breaks ranks with government and threatens to form a political party under the leadership of Morgan Tsvangirai and in September the same year this Actual happens in the form of the movement for Democratic Change. War veterans receive lump and monthly gratuities and in the build up to the 2000 elections. The labour leadership cum opposition party sides more and more to the right and is seen supporting settler colonial interests in land, commerce and industry and receives massive monetary and moral support from the same quarter. This alliance also receives massive external assistance from foreign interests like the USA and UK governments directly or indirectly through such organisations as the Westminster foundation etc. February 2000 a new draft constitution is taken to the people in a referendum and the labour leadership cum opposition together with civic organisations mobilise the electorate to reject it because it allegedly it confers too much power on the President but really because of the 'no compensation for land compulsory acquired for settlement' clause in the draft constitution. 2000 February realising the near success of the landed white class in derailing the land redistribution by using political parties they funded and helped to found, Veterans of Zimbabwe's 2<sup>nd</sup> Chimurenga and landless peasants occupied white owned farms and forced government to make appropriate legislation to fast track land distribution through the Land Acquisition Act 2000. Thus beginning the Third Chimurenga.

### **Problems faced by Workers/Forms of ill treatment**

Long working hours and low wages, lived in dirty overcrowded, badly built lit accommodation, given poor/rotten food and suffered from malnutrition, no medical treatment and mine forced workers forced to work under control of the police, no protective clothing, no compensation if injured, cheated so that they would not receive wages, beaten by supervisors, heavily taxed, no pensions, lack of representation, no unions or representation in parliament, job colour bar, workers given derogatory names.

### **CAUSES OF THE THIRD CHIMURENGA**

The First And Second Chimurenga were armed resistance against settler colonialists and their passive kith and kin in their homeland who condoned the racism and exploitation they practices against the black native. The Third Chimurenga is a legal and political assertion of the claims arising out of the victory in the second Chimurenga was fought for nothing or was fought and lost at the Lancaster House negotiation table and neither position is acceptable to those who fought the War or the majority of the people of Zimbabwe and suggestions of any of the two positions is a declaration of War. The 2nd Chimurenga brought one-man one vote and that is democracy. The latter is a tool for economic translation and is not an end in itself but a mean to end Democracy that allows the constitution of historical or traditional social and economic inequalities is a hollow democracy and is as false, as evil and as unacceptable as colonialism or slavery. The Third Chimurenga therefore is making democracy make political sense by using it to bring about economic emancipation to the historically disadvantaged through the mechanism of law made in this country and with the objective of undoing colonial injustices and wrongs. The major causes of this was are as follows:

## THE LANCASTER HOUSE AGREEMENT

The agreement was very faulty in that it maintained and sought to legalise the criminal gains of colonialism with respect to social and economic privileges of former colonisers at the expense of the native Africans especially with respect to land. The "willing seller, willing buyer clause", in the agreement together with the no compulsory acquisition of land for twenty years clause' not only limited but it also restricted and proscribed the legislative competency and sovereignty of the new state. The clauses also suspend for twenty years the translation of victory in armed combat into social and economic victory. From 1980 to 2000 No willing seller offered government useful land in regions 1,2 and 3 most of the little land made available was in regions 4 and 5.

## Continued economic marginalisation

From 1980 to 2000 few Africans in Zimbabwe had the opportunity to be entrepreneurs due to institutionalised conditions in the financial sector that tended to work against blacks especially with respect to collateral security. Affirmative Action by the government and by individuals remained meaningless without paradigm shift in the established money lending institutions as a basis for lending and without an historical even that could provide Africans with the property base to use as collateral security.

## The land donor conference 1998

Anticipating the end of the 20-year compulsory land acquisition clause, government organised an international land donor conference with a view to raise funding for a massive land reform programme. The UN, the IMF, the World Bank and all major Western Nations participated in this conference and pledged hundreds of millions of dollars for the land reform programme in Zimbabwe. Not a single cent was remitted and government was compelled to opt for the Third Chimurenga as events clearly revealed that all major so-called donors were interested in maintaining the status quo in terms of land ownership and social inequality in Zimbabwe. 2000 June in parliamentary elections the new opposition party almost upset the ruling ZANU (PF) party and wins 57 seats for ZANU PF. 2000/2001 the opposition near success gives impetus to Britain to ostracise the Mugabe regime and begins to talk about regime change and forces its friends to impose sanctions on Zimbabwe to ruin the economy in order to make the electorate vote Mugabe out of power. Inflation rises steadily and local white employs and other parties on the whole to do everything to make economic intolerable for and arm twist the electorate bring about regime change and remove Mugabe and ZANU PF out of power and derail the land redistribution programme.

2002 Presidential elections are won by the ZANU PF candidate and the MDC refuses to concede defeat or to recognise the new government and goes to court to challenge the election results and alleges intimidation vote and rigging etc. 2003 the nation is in a political stalemate with threatened invasion from Britain and America and court challenges to the presidency continuing and the opposition top leadership is arrested and taken to court for trying to assassinate the President. 2004 The 2003 scenario continues but inflation begins to fall and a general optimistic expectation pervades the nation as preparation and campaigning for the 2005 gubernatorial elections get underway.

## ZIMBABWE HERITAGE

The heritage of any nation is based on that nation's enduring political tradition. In the USA the national heritage is a deep – rooted political legacy born out of the War and rebellion against Great Britain and this is embodied in the term Republicanism. The French, who are fiercely proud of their heritage, have the French Revolution, which climaxed in the storming of the Bastille Palace and the slaughter of the nobility as their national heritage. Similarly the young nation of Zimbabwe has the ethos of the **second Chimurenga** as the national and enduring political tradition. The second Chimurenga ethos embodies political, cultural as well as economic principles, which define and continue to sustain us as a nation. To destroy any nation all one has to do is undermine the nation's heritage, the continuing psychological War by the enemies of Zimbabwe to distort and demonise not the second Chimurenga War but those who participated in that War especially the heroic leaders of the struggle. A heritage can be defined as an enduring legacy, a definitive event; achievement tradition or theory to which the peoples of a specific nation rally around, and have emotional attachments and for which they are prepared to defend and to go to War over if threatened or violated.

## SOCIAL AND CULTURAL HERITAGE

Culture in Zimbabwe reflects the major ethnic and tribal groups in the society. The demographic statistic that the people of Shona extraction constitute about 84% of the population with the Ndebele at about 7% Tonga; Venda; Kalanga; Chewa; Namibia; Shangani and other smaller groups constituting about another 7% of the

population. The white population has dwindled to less than 0.1% of the population. In spite of their small number the Ndebele influence on culture is fairly strong not only on the smaller groups but has rubbed on to the Shona tribes adjacent to them. The reverse is also quite true. Culture is dynamic. As a result it is a correct generalisation that there is such a thing as African culture in Zimbabwe as opposed to European culture. There are at most only variations in customs among the various groups in Zimbabwean society but the customs are either the same or closely resemble each other. Zimbabwean African culture has the following major elements:

- Nuclear or extended family
- Recognition and respect for age, parents and authority
- Respect for hard and honest work
- Acceptance of good morals in terms of dress, sex and marriage

There has however been a strong negative influence due to the mass media on the African culture in Zimbabwe. Television radio and the print media have done much harm in undermining the superior African culture by encouraging foreign tastes and habits in terms of diet, dress, the family, marriage, sex and the extended family. The first culprit has been the African family with divorce (unknown and unthinkable in pure African culture) wrecking many families. Disease due to sex before marriage and prostitution has grown to pandemic levels especially AIDS related ailments. The white man's consumption or sending patterns have also spread among young Zimbabweans and there are finding the extended family unbearable. Greed and exclusiveness are the hallmarks of the white man's culture and this is spreading facts among urbanised Africans. Unlike the white person in Zimbabwe the African does not have sufficient expendable cash and as a result debt and unfulfilled desire and wants are making the lives of many Zimbabweans miserable. African culture remains the superior culture in that it keeps society and the nation cemented. Moreover such social ills as prostitution, pandemics, street kids, crime and political opportunism (*kutengesha nyika*) because of greed would be non-existent. All these ills are as a result of lack of self-respect and lack of personal identity due to wanting to be a white persons e.g. Michael Jackson who straightens his nose an African woman who wears false hair extensions to look like a Caucasian or preferring to speak in a foreign language and not vernacular. The legacies we have as Africans in terms of diet are also unchangeable in that traditional diet consisting of small grains legumes an African fruits, vegetables and nuts naturally prevent such diseases as obesity / *kusimba* – a common feature of most urbanised woman on the major cause of high blood pressure, hypertension, osteoporosis and infertility. In medicine, traditional herbs and a good diet remain undoubtedly the panacea for a long healthy life and the solution to such problems as AIDS more so than condoms. Marriage and the family is the economic base of any society and nation. Premarital sex, divorce and sex for money and perversions such as lesbianism, homosexuality, drug taking including alcohol directly attack and undermine the family and as such society. A multiplicity of sexual partners before marriage will always lead one to either multiple sex partners in marriage or lack of satisfaction with one partner in marriage. In religion opinions vary but the facts remain. In African culture the fundamentals of Christianity are firmly embedded. Respect for age, parents and authority, good morals that is no fornication or adultery, no pervasion that is no homosexuality, taking care of the need etc are biblical positions that remain unchangeable. In short the white man's culture is not only incomplete with Christianity, it is in fact the antithesis and a direct attack on everything Godly, which is devilish. The problem between African religion and Christianity is not lack of morals in African religion but methods of accessing God or worship. Indeed this writer is convinced that there is lots of superstition with respect to methods of worship in African religion in as much as most main line emerging Christian churches are thoroughly paginated. It is only right and good therefore to promote and maintain our morally superior culture while adopting correct Christian methods of worship or religious inheritance will therefore remain for all time our good cultural value or morals. The values of any society therefore serve to define that society's identity. History has much been distorted by painting the African culture as irreligious to the extent that it is almost the accepted value among most young Zimbabweans to be immoral because a white Christian has an immoral value or practice for an example, walking naked or partial naked in public despite the fact that this violates Christian principles. The Black person should therefore not use the White man's values, or morals or immoral as the case may be as the reference point for good or bad values but should use traditional practice as the point departure and compare that with biblical principles which remain unchanging. Our values as Africans clearly identify and portray us as people, who shun immorality, graft corruption and laziness. We respect family and authority and hard work. We believe in God and we have no room for atheism in our culture. The second Chimurenga also defines our political and economic values. At the economic level the legacy of the second Chimurenga and our heritage from that event is that the resources that are God given belong to Zimbabwe irrespective of race or creed or tribe. Thus the land as a resource number one belongs to all Zimbabweans. White Zimbabweans with very negligible exceptions believe that land and all ill-gotten gains from the international crime of colonialism and accompanying ethnic cleansing and segregation are legitimately and exclusively the property of those former criminals. Whites do not want to share our land with us. We have said we will equitably share our land with whites and that remains and will always remain the Zimbabwean African's morally right and correct position. Any so called Zimbabweans therefore of any race who departs from this position is not only a threat to the interests of the Nation, but is in effect and in essence declaring that the second Chimurenga wasn't won and lost, that is won by Africans in Zimbabwe through much blood and joy and lost by settler colonialists through by much blood and tears. It serve to lead to a declaration of War. Through hard work and self – sustaining economic

policies, Zimbabweans with land firmly in their hands, can engage other nations at the economic level and benefit from the comparative advantage we have in terms of skilled disciplined labour, good climate, and abundance of minerals and varied flora and fauna – domestic and wild. Economic Activity therefore should benefit Zimbabweans first and foremost and this should happen through liberations simply relate to universal common suffrage being available to all citizens' subsequent elections whether Presidential or purgatorial. Such a gain is hollow and political emancipation therefore leads to and of necessity must lead to economic emancipation. Political emancipation therefore leads to and of necessity must lead to economic emancipation. This has alluded not only to Africa but to most of the former colonies through the practice of neo-colonisation by the former colonizers and the USA and most of the difficult War in that it is now being fought at the psychological level through Global media House and the agency of corrupted local comprador / collaborator journalists who raise and imagine and publish false nations of the freedom of expression assembly and association. This leads to people as it were shooting themselves on the foot because they through a corrupted democracy – one in which the voters perceptions have been warped in favour of the colonisers – vote into power those who perpetrate their economic subjugation. The battle of perceptions is an unfair War and it is most cruel and criminal because of the open aggression through demand made on former colonies under the guise of human rights. At the political level the second Chimurenga heritage as that as a people we are sovereign and can determine our own destiny without the interference and through democratic processes designed to safeguard our hard won independence. (See governance under legal and parliamentary affairs.)

### **National resources**

Zimbabwe is endowed with many natural resources, which in certain instances places the nation on the strategic resources map of the world.

#### **Land**

Zimbabwe's land mass is about 310million square miles and has a conducive climate being neither too hot nor too cold and has an average rainfall of about 1500m

#### **Minerals**

Zimbabwe has the following minerals chrome; iron; coal; gold; copper; tin; diamonds; platinum nickel and uranium. Our Chrome; platinum; nickel and coal reserves are of Global strategic importance because they are ranked in the top five in terms of quantity and quality. Unfortunately control of these minerals is still in foreign land and as a nation we are also not yet adding value to them.

#### **Wild life**

The three major game parks in Zimbabwe are second to the combined Kenyan and Tanzanian wildlife population of the Serengeti game park. The big five wild game elephant, buffalo, giraffe, lion and rhino are more abundant in our game parks than in any other park in the world.

#### **People**

With a population of about 14 000 000 people, Zimbabwe is still sparsely populated considering that our land mass can sustain seventy million with optimal economic utilization. The plus about this population is its literacy levels – about 97% and its varied skills base from which even the most advanced nations are tapping into. Through many tricks especially after the 2000 parliamentary elections, the Western countries have not rested in trying to spark a civil War in Zimbabwe, which they will use as a pretext to directly interfere in the politics of this nation. Thatchell the infamous homosexual has been quoted as saying that he is not only organising but also sponsoring a group consisting of personnel in Zimbabwe's armed forces and in the Diaspora to militarily bring about an end to the Mugabe regime in Zimbabwe. The West Minister Foundation and even much earlier the Heritage Foundation a USA right wing organisation are trying and had tried to use opposition parties in Zimbabwe to engage the Zimbabwean armed forces. On the whole the people of this nation have refused to be used in this very destructive and dangerous way and have democratically expressed their wishes at the polls. The people of this nation save those who pipe and beat the Crum of this nation's enemies remain resolutely united in the face of an unprecedented onslaught from Europe and the USA.

### **NATIONAL SYMBOLS**

#### **The National Anthem**

Born and inspired by the War of liberation, the national anthem is as it were the rallying point of the nation. Authored by Professor Mutsvairo, it describes and narrates in a few words of origins, history, beliefs and aspirations (each student to memorise the song).

### The national flag

The national flag represent the state wood and together with coat of arms they are the official and visible tokens of the state and its authority and existence. The flag is also the product of the War of liberation. The red star represents our socialist ideals and the Zimbabwe bird proudly points back to our distant origins and prowess as people and nation in antiquity among the Great civilisations of the world. The white background on which the above two are superimposed represents our desire for peace and tranquillity within and without. The red stripes symbolises the blood of the heroes who died liberating the country, yellow our mineral resources, green our flora and fauna and black the indigenous African natives of this nation. It is incumbent upon every Zimbabwean and any foreigner on our soil to acknowledge our state hood by standing at attention when the flag is lowered where ever and whatever one is doing. Standing at attention is not a religious Act as some over zealous and misguided so called Christians think. Kneeling or bowing down in reverence is a religious Act reserved for God that is why Shadrech and his other two friends were thrown in a furnace. Nowhere in Christian writing is standing erect an Act of worship or homage. It would be only right and fair to refuse to kneel to the flag for every Christian. It is only right and fair for every Christian to stand erect in recognition not homage of those who rule them.

### The Great Zimbabwe monument

Located near Masvingo town, it represents unparalleled architectural design and construction and stands as a direct insult to those who have ridiculed Africans of possessing no scientific psychological make up or achievements or capability. The King of the Great Zimbabwe period and latter dynasties used it as a palace and a temple.

### The Victoria falls

A natural geological formation formed years of erosion, the feature has few rivals if any and has water plunging a hundred meters forming thunder and mist from which its more appropriate Tonga names is derived from mosi-oya-tinya the smoke that thunders. It is the nation's prime tourist resort attraction.

### Civic responsibilities

**Disasters-** has technology has advanced so as disasters or accidents have also increased. Management of these disasters has become a major science and the role of each citizen in disasters has become an imperative. Major disasters can be listed as: disease pandemic, such as Aids, Sars and Ebola, floods as a result of usually very high rainfall due to industrialisation or broken dam walls, drought due to changing weather patterns as a result of industrialisation and accidents at work place, for example, airplane crashes, gas leaks and nuclear contamination, earthquakes, etc.

**Disease management-** is first and foremost an individual responsibility. Correct dietary and sexual habits are the most front lines. Each individual is a national resource and eating junk food or recklessly imbibing in drugs and alcohol destroys that line as much as taking irresponsible and immoral sexual behaviour like sex before marriage or infidelity within marriage. With infectious diseases, each individual should take note of and report any suspected infections and quarantine self or the affected victim. **Floods-** earthquakes and workplace disasters require the nation to rally behind those affected by donating food and clothes and shelter. It is also necessary to avoid flood and quake prone areas and to take heed to quake or flood Warning. **Industrial accidents-** is a man made problem, which requires social responsibility to minimise the risks. There is no such thing as safe technology. The issue at stake is risk minimisation and management. Droughts have always been there before the white man's agriculture and especially exotic crops such as maize. Despite droughts in Africa was not found unpopulated as a result. A banana plant does not grow in Gokwe as naturally as it does in Risutu valley in as much as maize thrives in Peru but is prone to drought in Zimbabwe. Maize is a stock feed in that grows well in its homeland in South America but is prone to drought in Zimbabwe. This paradigm shift in our dietary habits will go a long way towards national food self-sufficiency because eventually sooner rather than latter even irrigated crops will fail if there is no flow in the dams. There is no other credible long lasting solution to drought at the family or national level than reverting to the small grains. All stable nations thrive on patriotism. Patriotism relates to each citizen's ability to identify with his nation by being able to distinguish between party political issues and national issues. Sovereignty, land and defending the nation are not party political issues but national issues, which every real Zimbabweans must stand up in defence.

**Patriotism means:** defending the nation physically and in armed combat when called upon to do so by the authorities in power or individually when the situation so demands like in the case of unilateral superpower attack. Defending the nation through positive publicity. The nation's Greatest and most potent enemy today is

the one amongst us who agrees to spread falsehoods about the nation's politics and economy. Other than the dissident menace Zimbabwe has been the most peaceful nation apart from countries like Botswana and Namibia. Supporting the nation through tax payments, practice the environmentally friendly countries, for example avoiding littering graft, crime, corruption, greed and harmful behaviour such as premarital sex, respect and tolerate other races, tribes, religious opinions and beliefs and cherish unity in diversity among the various stakeholders in spite of differences in approaches.

### **Economic and social problems faced by Zimbabwe since 1980.**

Economic problems- need to develop rural areas to stop rural urban migrations and correct a hundred years of the colonial rule, redirect economic priorities to serve the whole population rather a small white section of the population, bring health education and shelter to all Zimbabweans, recurring droughts 1983, 1992, 1997, 2002 as it negatively affects the national economy and agricultural products, deal with unfavourable terms of trade, stop the shrinking in the economy and reverse growing unemployment, receive inflation and the devaluation of the Zimbabwean dollar against major international currencies, gradual increases in prices of basic commodities due to speculation and profiteering, falling commodity prices in the international market, disinvestments due to more vigorous indigenisation economic approach, political interference in the nation's politics through the sponsoring and creation of opposition parties with foreign agenda, the brain drain, corruption and decline moral value leading to Aids.

### **How the government has solved these problems**

Drought in Zimbabwe has been partly alleviated by importing grain from abroad and construction of dams and also creating grain strategic reserves seeds packs given to peasants to help them recover from droughts. Of major importance has been the redistribution of land and reducing pressure in the congested rural areas and settling people in areas with fertile soils and high rainfall. The Ministry of Employment Creation and Indigenisation have gone some way in creating employment, externally originated and driven economic policies have been abandoned in favour of home grown solutions, the government has abandoned ESAP and attention has been redirected to the East Asian economies to encourage investment and cooperation, SADC and COMESA union trade arrangements have been adopted to encourage an increase in international trade, however, Zimbabwe has not managed to solve all problems. Cost sharing in education and health has been instituted to alleviate spiralling cost. Indigenisation, Affirmative Action, creation of **SEDCO**, the land bank, land redistribution, etc, have the long way towards alleviating the unemployment problem. New monetary policies together with anti corruption drive have seen inflation decreasing slowly but gradually during the 2002 period. Reawakening of the peoples' moral values and their culture as a solution to decreasing and ultimately wiping out STDs and AIDS infection and the deliberate thrust towards self-employment through entrepreneurship.

### **QUESTIONS AND SOLUTIONS (history)**

1. The major causes of the [Matabele War of [dispossession] Anglo-Ndebele of 1893 was:
  - a. The loss of power
  - b. The land issue
  - c. The chieftainship issue
  - d. Rhode's desire to spread the British influence north of the Limpopo**
2. The Act, which stipulated that there was no skilled black worker, was:
  - a. The Industrial Conciliation Act**
  - b. The Labour Relations Act
  - c. The Black Native Workers Act
  - d. The Mining Workers Act
3. The Geneva Conference was held in:
  - a. 1975
  - b. 1976**
  - c. 1979
  - d. 1965
4. The piece of legislation that restricted the size of acreage and the number of cattle that an African Family could farm and own was:
  - a. Land Apportionment Act 1934



- b. **Land Husbandry Act 1951**
  - c. Land Tenure 1951
  - d. Land Apportionment Act 1930
- 5. The central issue in the History of Zimbabwe has been:
  - a. The issue of sanctions
  - b. The issue of racism
  - c. **The land issue**
  - d. The issue of tribalism
- 6. The yellow colour on the Zimbabwe flag represents
  - a. The people of Zimbabwe
  - b. The flora and fauna
  - c. **The mineral wealthy of the country**
  - d. Agriculture
- 7. The Great Zimbabwe Kingdom had notable achievements such as:
  - a. **Architecture, legal and commercial system**
  - b. Numerically
  - c. Calendar
  - d. All of the above
- 8. The notable concession, which formed the dislodgement of Lobengula, was
  - a. Moffat Agreement
  - b. Thomas Banes Concession
  - c. **The Rudd Concession**
  - d. The David Livingston concession
- 9. The Anglo-American TNC was developed from 1890 onwards and funded by:
  - a. Limpopo London Chamber
  - b. British Government
  - c. London-Rhodesia Company
  - d. **British South African Company**
- 10. The patriotic front was an alliance between the
  - a) ANC and ZANU
  - b) ZAPU and ZIPA
  - c) **ZAPU and ZANU**
  - d) ZANU NDONGA and ANC
- 11. The land Apportionment Act of 1930 effectively
  - a) Led to the distribution of native political structure
  - b) **Led to the dispossession of natives to all their fertile land**
  - c) Led to the establishment of the settler colonialism
  - d) Harmonisation of the relations between whites and blacks
- 12. The reason why Smith negotiated for the internal settlement was to
  - a) **End the guerilla War**
  - b) To assure Muzorewa the UNAC was in control
  - c) To put an end to confusion in the country
  - d) To enable him to access the substance of agreement

13. Which of the following contributed to the rise of the 1<sup>st</sup> Chimurenga?
- a) The industrial conciliation Act
  - b) The Land Husbandry Act
  - c) The introduction of forced labour**
  - d) The Rudd Concession
14. The following were the causes of the **Third** Chimurenga except:
- a) The Lancaster House Conference of 1979
  - b) Britain's failure to honour her pledge
  - c) The Land Donor Conference of 1998
  - d) The occupation of farms by ex-combatants**
15. The reconciliation policy adapted in 1980 was aimed at:
- a) The unity between ZANU PF and ZAPU PF
  - b) Integration of all tribes in Zimbabwe
  - c) Forgiving the settler colonialists of decades of exploitation and integration of black natives**
  - d) Gaining approval of the new Government by the British
16. The green colour, on our Zimbabwean flag represents:
- a) The people of Zimbabwe
  - b) The flora and fauna**
  - c) The mineral wealth of the country
  - d) Peace and tranquillity
17. The **National flag** together with the **court of arms** represents:
- a) Our Statehood**
  - b) Selfishness
  - c) The arms of War
  - d) None of the above
18. The document, which is known as the political protection document is:
- a) The Rudd Concession
  - b) The Moffat Treaty
  - c) The Royal Charter**
  - d) The Gobbler Treaty
19. The following were participants to the Berlin Conference except:
- a) Spain**
  - b) German
  - c) Belgium
  - d) Portugal
20. Which country participated as an **observer** to the Berlin Conference?
- a) Belgium
  - b) France
  - c) Britain
  - d) U.S.A.**
21. One of the main reasons of the Berlin conference was to:
- a) To lay down rules for the partition and exploitation of Africa**
  - b) To destroy Africa

- c) To decide on the duties of the African Chiefs  
d) To channel the developments to Africa
22. The strike that paralysed all industrial and commercial Activity in all cities was called in:  
a) 1947  
**b) 1948**  
c) 1949  
d) 1950
23. The Federation was created in:  
a) 1951  
b) 1952  
**c) 1953**  
d) 1954
24. The following countries were part of the Federation except:  
a) Southern Rhodesia  
b) Northern Rhodesia  
**c) South Africa**  
d) Nyasaland
25. Which of the following party was formed in 1955?  
**a) The National Youth League**  
b) The African Railway Workers Union  
c) A.N.C.  
d) N.D.P.
26. Who chaired the 1979 Lancaster House Conference on Zimbabwe?  
a) Lord Soames  
**b) Lord Carrington**  
c) Lord Salisbury  
d) Lord Malvern
27. Creation of Polytechnic Colleges by the Government is a sign of:  
a) Reducing the spread of HIV/Aids  
b) Encourage Youths to Socialise  
**c) Commitment to National Development**  
d) Occupying the youth
28. Which of the leaders listed below assisted the ZANLA forces greatly during the armed struggle?  
a) Julius Nyerere  
b) Kenneth Kaunda  
**c) Samora Machel**  
d) Jomo Kenyatta
29. Which Statement is not true of the history of Zimbabwe and heritage?  
a) Patriotism and National pride, National Development, Unity and National Heritage.  
b) It provide insight into past independent development  
c) Enhance cultural awareness and a sense of national pride  
**d) It provides a detailed analysis of party politics**
30. Which colour on the national flag symbolises the abundance of mineral wealth:  
a) Green  
**b) Yellow**  
c) Blue

- d) Red
31. The main reason for Europeans obtaining colonies in the late 19<sup>th</sup> century was to:
- a) Civilise Africa and Asia
  - b) Spread Christianity
  - c) Prevent Communist Revolutions
  - d) Obtain raw materials**
32. The Zimbabwe bird on the Zimbabwean flag represents:
- a) The Country's Aspirations**
  - b) The enormous bird population in the country
  - c) The political freedom of the country
  - d) The needs and challenges of the new Zimbabwe
33. The unity accord between ZANU and ZAPU was signed in:
- a) 1977
  - b) 1997
  - c) 1987**
  - d) 1986
34. The Responsible Government that then replaced the BSAC rule in Southern Rhodesia came into existence in:
- a) 1920
  - b) 1921
  - c) 1922
  - d) 1923**
35. The missionary who pretended to be Lobengula's friend when in fact was advancing the interest of the British was called:
- a) Charles Rudd
  - b) C.D.Helm**
  - c) Rochfort Maguire
  - d) Gonsalo da Silvera
36. Which of the following symbols is not a Zimbabwean Heritage preservation item?
- a) National Anthem
  - b) National Flag
  - c) Shrines and Monuments
  - d) Bible**
37. The law that was passed so as to restrict competition between poor white farmers and the African and to protect white farmers economically was the:
- a) Maize Control Act 1931**
  - b) Land Husbandry Act 1951
  - c) The Land Bank Act 1912
  - d) The Land Apportionment Act 1930
38. The Land Apportionment Act of 1969 resulted in the land being divided along:
- a) Economic lines
  - b) Political lines
  - c) Racial lines**
  - d) Cultural lines
39. In post independent Zimbabwe the integration of the Army was difficult mainly because:

- a) **During the War there had been three armies**
  - b) Of lack of financial resources
  - c) Of the language differences
  - d) The country was focussing on its programme of "Growth with Equity"
40. Which of the Statements is **untrue** of the Land Husbandry Act?
- a) It was calculated to drive away the Africans into town or commercial
  - b) It was an attack on the whole traditional way of life of the Africans
  - c) It forced the whole African people to ally with the Urban African against the settler regime
  - d) **It caused shortages of land in the reserves, congestion and erosion**
41. The major characteristics of neo-colonialism are:
- a) Aid with strings attached
  - b) Constant interference in the political and economic policy making process of the weaker States
  - c) Promotion of cultural and economic dependence
  - d) **All of the above**
42. Leaders in developing countries who protect foreign interests are known as:
- a) Patriots
  - b) Liberals
  - c) **Puppets**
  - d) Demagogues
43. Which political party among the following in Zimbabwe represent the Interests of the Bourgeoisie?
- a) **MDC**
  - b) NAGG
  - c) NDU
  - d) ANC
44. Which one of the individuals listed bellow disappeared during the struggle for independence?
- a) Michael Mawema
  - b) **Edson Sithole**
  - c) Leopold Takawira
  - d) Morton Malianga
45. Z.A.N.U. was formed in:
- a) 1962
  - b) **1963**
  - c) 1964
  - d) 1965
46. Classes in Society simply imply the existence of:
- a) Democracy
  - b) Harmony in the Society
  - c) **Class contradiction in the Society**
  - d) Free Market economies
47. The emergency of pressure groups and increased sanctions on Zimbabwe was largely due to:
- a) **Land acquisition process**
  - b) The level of Democracy
  - c) Zimbabwe's Human Rights record
  - d) The fall of the bipolar system
48. Which pair played a major role in deceiving Lobengula?

- a) John Moffat and Lord Salisbury  
b) Lotshe and Mgandani  
**c) Charles Helm and John Moffat**  
d) Starr Jameson and John Moffat
49. Early socialisation for the African child has been carried out for a long time through the:  
**a) Family**  
b) Media  
c) Church  
e) School
50. Patriotism can be best defined as a:  
a) Strong sense of belonging, irresponsibility and accountability  
b) A sense of belonging, value, accuracy and accountability  
**c) A strong sense of belonging, identify, responsibility and accountability**  
e) None of the above
51. The battle that marked the beginning of the second Chimurenga in 1966:  
a) Shangani battle  
b) Chinhoyi battle  
c) Chinhoi  
**e) Chinhoyi battle**
52. The keeps or protected villages were introduced in order to:  
a) To educate peasants on the reasons for liberation struggle  
b) Strategise on how to stop the War  
**c) Deny guerrillas food and a political base**  
d) Hold meeting with guerrillas
53. The ZANU Chairmen in 1964 who was assassinated in Zambia on 18 March 1975 was:  
a) Nyagumbo  
b) J.M.Tongogara  
**c) Herbert Chitepo**  
d) J.Z. Moyo
54. In 1976 the Rhodesian forces killed refugees at Chimoio and Nyadzonya in:  
a) Zambia  
b) Tanzania  
c) Ghana  
**d) Mozambique**
55. The superior African culture has been Greatly undermined by:  
a) Education  
**b) Mass Media**  
c) Oral tradition  
d) Opposition Politics
56. The Rudd Concession is also known as the:  
a) Rhodes Concession  
b) Lippert Concession  
c) Helm's Concession  
**e) Mineral Concession**
57. One of the earliest Europeans to trade with the Shona people was:  
a) British

- b) Portuguese  
c) Belgians  
**d) Arabs**
58. One of the worst crimes of Humanity in the history of mankind was the:  
a) Iraq –Kuwait War  
b) Us-British Iraq War  
c) DRC War  
**d) Atlantic Slave trade**
59. Which of the following is not an early Iron Age State of Zimbabwe?  
a) Mutapa  
**b) Gaza**  
c) Rozwi  
d) Great Zimbabwe
60. Around which date and where was the Mutapa State founded?  
a) 1350 in the Danda area  
**b) 1450 in the Dande area**  
c) 1550 in the Guruuswa  
d) 1650 in the Guruuswa
61. The major reason for the collapse of the Rozwi State was?  
**a) Ndebele arrival**  
b) Drought of 1835  
c) Poor Administration  
d) European colonisation
62. Who planned and coordinated the colonisation of Zimbabwe?  
a) Reverend Charles Helm  
b) The Queen of England  
c) Sir Charles Rudd  
**d) Cecil John Rhodes**
63. What was the primary reason for the colonisation of Zimbabwe?  
**a) The search for the second Rand Belt.**  
b) The search for the fertile agricultural land  
c) The search for the Cape to Cairo route  
d) The search for more colonies to rule
1. **Discuss the factors that led to the rise of nationalism in southern Rhodesia among Africans from 1898-1965.**
- Land alienation / exploitation / creation of reserves – Land Apportionment Act (LAA).
  - Loss of sovereignty / loss of traditional powers by chiefs.
  - Job colour – bar reservation, skilled, semi – skilled for whites and unskilled labour and low salaries for Africans according to the Industrial Conciliation Act (1934).
  - Brutalities e.g. at work places.
  - Pass Laws – restricting freedom of movement.
  - Lack of voting rights – inadequate parliamentary representation.
  - Educational bottlenecks / racial imbalances in education / racists education e.g. group A and B schools.
  - Forced labour e.g. in mines, public works.
  - Taxation – hut tax, cattle tax, etc.

- Poor working conditions – low salaries / wages, not allowed to form trade unions, poor housing, unhealthy working conditions.
- Colonial Legislation – Masters and Servants Act (1901), Maize Control Act (1934), Land Husbandry Act (1951).

### 2. Discuss the results of the partition and colonisation of Africa by European powers.

#### Positive Results

- Spread of Christianity and Education.
- Introduction of new methods of Farming.
- A wide variety of food for the people – increase in population.
- New medicines, hospitals and clinics – increase in population.
- Construction of roads and railways.
- Growth of towns, industries and new forms of employment.
- End of slave trade and slavery – indigenous people needed in Africa to work in the mines, farms and industries in Africa itself.

#### Negative Results

- Loss of independence and power by the local indigenous rulers.
- European exploitation and plundering of African resources.
- African natural resources taken to Europe to develop European

Industries and European wealth and Capitalism.

- Undermining of traditional society, culture and religion.
- Wars and loss of life during the Partition and Colonisation as Africans were resisting the partition.
- Africans were dispossessed of their land and freedom.
- Drastically change in Africa's political structure.
- Africans were discriminated against and were politically and socially oppressed.

### 3. Discuss the social and economic achievements of the Zimbabwean government between 1980 and 1990.

#### Social achievements:

##### Education:

- Reconstruction of schools.
- Building new schools.
- Expansion of primary and secondary education.
- Expansion of technical education, teacher training and
- University education.

##### Health:

- Additional health facilities i.e. clinics and hospitals.
- Training of more health personnel.
- Employment of expatriate personnel.
- Free health services up to 1990.

##### Social Welfare facilities:

- School fees, hospital fees, catering for the blind and disabled, drought relief.

##### Co-operatives:



- Social and economic, to encourage people to work together, irrigation schemes, poultry projects, bread making, sewing and knitting cooperatives.

### **Legislation:**

- Legal age of majority Act – 18 years. Voting and independent decisions, human rights, freedom of expression, Labour Relations Act.

### **Economic Achievements:**

- Subsidies on basic commodities.
- Parastatals, expansion of economic Activities and employment.
- Government shares in strategic industries e.g. NRZ, ZISCO, ZESA, and Hwange Colliery.
- Resettlement of peasant farmers.
- Price controls.
- Minimum Wage Act 1980.
- Training of manpower – ZIMDEF.
- Agricultural expansion.

## **4. Discuss the social; political and economic post independence development in Zimbabwe from 1980-1990.**

### **Social:**

#### **Education:**

- Reconstruction of schools destroyed during the War.
- Infrastructural Development such as primary, secondary, tertiary and vocational institutions.
- ZINTEC programmes to alleviate teacher shortage.
- Free Education (primary), compulsory education, and mass education.
- Expansion of enrolment at all educational institutions.
- Employment of expatriate teachers.
- Free social services ceased with the introduction of IMF- induced ESAP (1990).

#### **Health:**

- Reconstruction of health facilities destroyed during the War.
- Additional health facilities built, that is, clinics & hospitals.
- Licensing of private players in the health sector.
- Deliberate attempt to expand Health Human Resources that is training more health personnel.
- Employment of expatriate health personnel.
- Free medical service up to 1990.
- Provision of contraceptive/family planning.
- Free social services ceased with IMF-induced ESAP (1990).
- Social welfare facilities provided e.g. school fees, hospital fees  
Catering for the blind and disabled.

#### **Co-operatives:**

- These were encouraged e.g. irrigation schemes & various projects such as poultry.

#### **Economic:**

- Subsidies on basic commodities e.g. mealie-meal.
- Infra-structural development e.g. roads, dams, bridges, etc.
- Oriented markets were taken to the people e.g. GMB, CMB depots.
- Government participation in major industries through acquisition of shares e.g. NRZ, ZISCO, and ZESA.
- Resettlement of peasants e.g. 52 000 resettled by 1989 (Robin Palmer), though a far cry from initially intended target of 162 000.

- Price controls put in place.
- Minimum wages promulgated – Minimum Wage Act (1980) making random / wanton retrenchment difficult – needed Ministerial approval.
- Deliberate attempt by the Government to boost training of manpower e.g. ZIMDEF.
- Donor funding to promote economic development e.g. ZIMCORD.

### **Political:**

- Blacks got into corridors of power.
- Enfranchising the blacks.
- Integration of the Army.
- Political pluralism (ZUM, ZANU NDONGA).
- Dissident problem - ethnic skirmishes (security).
- Unity Accord – 1987.
- Creation of Executive Presidency.
- RENAMO menace.
- South Africa de-stabilisation.
- Adoption of socialism as the country's ideology.

### **5. Explain the meaning and purpose of:**

#### **(a). The National Flag**

#### **(b). The National Anthem**

The National Flag

Was worked out at independence and has the following Features:

#### **Colours**

- **Green** - representing the country's Agriculture and Vegetation [Flora & Fauna].
- **Red** – representing the blood of Heroes shed during the War of liberation.
- **Black** – representing the Black majority of Zimbabwe.
- **Yellow** –representing the country's mineral wealth.
- **White** – Peace and Reconciliation, which came with the Independence of Zimbabwe.
- **The Red Star** – The country's Socialist Ideals.
- **The Zimbabwe Bird** – Our distant Origins and powers in History and Civilisation.

#### **Purpose and Significance:**

- Carries the important message of peace, freedom, equality, co-operation and independence.
- An achievement which marked the end of the War and independence
- Represent Statehood and maturity.
- Indicates the authority and the existence of the State of Zimbabwe
- Indicates / States the **Sovereignty** of Zimbabwe.
- Promotes unity and nationalism.
- Reminds us of the country's resources.

#### **The National Anthem:**

##### **Introduction**

Was written by Professor Solomon Mutsaers of the University of Zimbabwe and is in three languages, Shona, Ndebele and English. It is sang every morning on the ZTV, at National gatherings, the opening of Sporting Festivals, at Schools Assemblies and at Football Tournaments involving Zimbabwe Soccer National team and teams from other countries.

##### **Purpose of the National Anthem:**

- Reminds the nation that it was born out of War of Liberation.
  - That Zimbabwe was born out of the blood of our heroes.
  - It calls on the citizens to be prepared to defend the nation against all foes.
  - It praises God to bless the land.
  - It is the rallying point of the nation.
  - It unites and inspires the people.
  - It cultivates and promotes nationalism.
  - It cultivates patriotism.
  - It encourages commitment to national development.
6. Explain the causes and objectives of the third Chimurenga?

### **Introduction:**

The **Third Chimurenga** is the struggle by the people of Zimbabwe to regain possession of the means of production, e.g. land that had largely been in the hands of the white settlers for more than one hundred years. This struggle is a follow-up to the First and Second Chimurenga especially of the latter, which brought about political independence.

### **Causes of the Third Chimurenga:**

The Lancaster House Agreement

- Which legalised the maintenance and continued possession of the land by the settlers.
- Controlled the legislative competency and sovereignty of the new State through the "willing seller, willing buyer" clause, which was not meaningfully implemented.
- Britain's failure to honour the Lancaster Agreement by not funding the Land Reform.
- Continued economic marginalisation of the indigenous people.
- The Land Donor Conference of 1998 and failure by the donors to fund the land reform programme.
- White settlers and the British support for the opposition party, which was against the land reform programme.

### **Objectives of the Third Chimurenga:**

- To repossess and re-distribute land among the landless indigenous people of Zimbabwe.
- To emphasise the country's sovereignty and independence.
- To fight neo – colonialism and remove the vestiges of imperialism.
- To gain possession of other means of production.
- To encourage the indigenous people to participate in all the business and economic Activities of the country.
- To facilitate the possession of capital with which to start a business.
- To translate the victory in armed combat of the Second Chimurenga into a social and economic victory.

7. **"Every individual in a State is expected to carryout civic responsibilities" State any five civic responsibilities and explain their meaning and purpose?**

### **Definition:**

Civic responsibilities are the social, economic and political and cultural obligations and responsibilities that every citizen is expected to carryout in the society for his/her benefit and for the common good of the country.

### **Civic Responsibility**

### **Diseases And Health Management**

Personally avoiding drugs and excessive drinking in order to be productive and maintain good healthy relations with others. To assist in preventing the spread of diseases such as AIDS, EBOLA, SARS, etc. by avoiding irresponsible behaviour.

### **Disaster Management**

Helping by donating food, clothes and shelter to victims of disasters.

Preventing the occurrence of accidents at work so as to help in controlling injury and destruction of property and equipment.

### **Defending The Nation**

Spreading the good name of the country, Paying tax to assist in building public revenue, preserving cultural value and being patriotic.

### **Economic Responsibilities**

Working hard and being productive, being creative, establishing businesses, using resources economically, exposing corruption and theft.

### **Political Civic Responsibilities**

The citizens must be constructive in political discussion, registering as a voter and voting in all elections, Cherishing and respecting unity and national heritage and respecting and tolerating other races, tribes, religions, opinions and beliefs.

## **8. Discuss the impact of NGOs in Zimbabwe**

### **Positive** (Economic Impact)

- Employment creation for locals and externals.
- Project funding.
- Improvement in the standard of living.
- Providing assistance in times of disasters e.g. drought, floods, earthquakes, cyclones, etc.

### **Social Impact:**

- Donation medical equipment and drugs to fight chronic diseases e.g. Aids, Ebola, Sars, etc.
- Education on health and hygiene.
- Offering educational assistance to orphans and the underprivileged.
- Child feeding in rural areas.

### **Negative Impact:**

- Sponsoring opposition parties.
- Representing the interests of their mother countries.
- Dumping products.
- Testing of drugs on people.
- Encouraging the dependency syndrome of locals.

## **9. Discuss the role of the media in Zimbabwe and how it has shaped the perceptions and values of Zimbabwe Society?**

### **The Role Of The Media**

- Entertain the masses/people.
- Educate the masses.
- Inform the public.

### **Extended Role of the Media**

- Shape perceptions.
- Create opinions
- Shape response patterns to issues.

- Peers the public positive and pragmatic thinking.
- Influence thinking and decision-making.

### **The media in the contemporary world:**

- Propagate Cultural values from foreign countries.
- Propagate Global issues with elusive principles.
- Imposition of ideologies e.g. neo – liberalism, moral values e.g. homosexuality and military protest.

- Politicising of socio- economic issues e.g. land issue of Zimbabwe.

### **Impact on shaping perceptions in Zimbabwe**

- Media has cultivated negative opinions.
- Built self-denial in Zimbabweans.
- Lack of identity.

## **10. Justify the 1998 Land acquisition process**

### **Social Reasons**

- A society is identified by the ownership of resources particularly land.
- Need of re-distribution of land equitably.
- Population pressure especially in communal areas.
- Create space for urban infrastructural development especially accommodation.

### **Political:**

- Land was the major grievance of the first and second Chimurenga.
- Failure of the Lancaster House Agreement.
- Failure of Land Amendment Act (1992).
- 1998 Land Donor Conference

### **Economics**

- Land is the major means of production for Zimbabwe and need to transform political liberation to economic liberation by empowering the black majority.
- Land reform was necessary to gain control and access to strategic resources like minerals, flora and fauna which were/still in the hands of a minority white population.
- Need to utilise idle land so as to achieve optimum economic growth.

## **11. Anglo companies continue to dominate the economy of Zimbabwe. Outline the BSAC economic Activities from 1890 – 1923**

There are about at least 450 Anglo- Companies operating and controlling strategic economic sectors in Zimbabwe.

### **Basic Economic Activities**

#### **Mining**

- Primary economic Activity from the company.
- Precious minerals such as gold, iron and copper.
- Gave settlers' concessions, but BSAC retained exclusive rights to buy and sell minerals.

#### **Agriculture**

- Gained priority after failure to secure minerals.
- Legislative support for settler Agriculture at the expense of African Sector e.g. Land Bank Act, European Produce Act.
- Dispossession of Africans of land and translocation them to reserves.

#### **Trade**

- Realigned local trade to South Africa, in place of the Portuguese along Zambezi River that had been in existence before the Settler occupation.
- Traded in goods such as minerals, livestock, food commodities, etc.
- Imposition of trade barriers to stop African involvement.

### **Allocation**

- Imposition of a variety of taxes on Africans e.g. hut tax, poll tax, dog tax, cattle levy, dip tank tax, etc.
- Revenue would assist in the Administration and Development of the Colony.
- Taxes meant to stop African Entrepreneurship and to force them to labour in European farms and mines.

### **Responsible Government (1923)**

- Ensured that British interest would remain dominant

### **12. Discuss The Steps, Which Were Taken In The Colonisation Of Zimbabwe From 1880-1889**

- Scramble for territories by European powers to end imperial and industrial ambitions. These powers included Britain, Portugal, Belgium, German and France.
- In Zimbabwe numerous explorers, hunters, adventurers, missionaries and concession seekers appeared.

### **Berlin Conference 1884**

- Delimitation of the Sphere of Influence.
- Doctrine of effective occupation.
- Resolutions fostered Active interests in areas occupied by Boers, Portuguese and British.

### **Grobler Treaty 1887**

- Diplomatic Treaty by Transvaal Republic and Ndebele State.
- Defensive pact.
- Create friendship between two States.
- To protect all Boer citizens.
- To get a way to the sea/coast.

### **Moffat Treaty 1888**

- Diplomatic treat between British and Ndebele State.
- Led to the cancellation of the Grobler Treaty.
- Lobengula agreed not to enter into any diplomatic negotiations with any other foreign power without British knowledge and consent at the Cape.
- British would protect Ndebele from Foreign Aggression.

### **Rudd Concession 1888 (October)**

- Signed by Lobengula and Charles Rudd and his party.
- **Terms:** Lobengula and other Ndebele leaders were to receive a monthly pension of £100.
- 1000 rifles/guns.
- 100 000 rounds of ammunition.
- A gunboat to patrol the Zambezi River in order to stop the Portuguese.

### **To Rhodes**

- Rights to metals and minerals in Lobengula's Kingdom.
- Right to do anything they deemed necessary in the Ndebele State.
- To dig one hole.

### **13. Justify the rise of mass nationalism from 1948 – 1978**

Introduction: African resented their loss of independence.

### **Grievances / Causes**

- Long standing political and economic issues remained unresolved.

- Negative effects of successive settler legislation on land distribution e.g. Land Apportionment Act; Land Husbandry Act, Land Tenure Act.
- Dispossession of Traditional Territories and translocation to overcrowded dry, tsetse fly infested reserves fuelled the resentment.
- Loss of major means of production.

### Issues

- Resentment of coercive labour resentment tactics like Chibharo.
- Resentment over unfair labour legalisation e.g. passes laws, industrial Cancellation Act.
- Rise of militant Trade Unions in 1940s as a reaction to settler indifference to labour problems.
- Violent / ruthless suppression of African strikes and repressive laws.
- Discrimination at work places and repressive laws.
- Rise to independence / loss of independence.
- Political.

### 14. Identify 5 Acts Of Parliament Used To Disadvantage

#### Indigenous People From 1898 – 1975

- (Native Reserves Order Council 1898.
- Hut Tax 1903.
- Dog Tax and Land Bank Acts 1912.
- European Produce Act 1917.
- Morris Charter Commission 1925.
- Land Apportionment Act 1934.
- Cattle Levy Act 1934.
- Industrial Conciliation Act 1934.
- Racial discrimination 1934.
- Maize Control Act.
- Land Husbandry Act 1951.

15. Discuss three major Legislative Provisions or Instruments that led to the marginalisation of the Native Africans in the then Rhodesia from 1898-1965.

#### The Land Apportionment Act of 1930

This Act disadvantaged and marginalised Africans because of the following:

- It legalised the displacements of Africans from large, rich fertile & prime regions.
- It led to unfair land distribution.
- More land was given to few whites, e.g., 4,9million acres to 100 000 whites.
- Prime or virgin land to whites.
- Less land to the black majority in regions 4 and 5 that are hot, dry, tsetse fly infested, infertile and with very low rainfall (28.6million acres).
- It impoverished the blacks as they produced little in the poor areas.
- It led to overcrowding in African areas leading to pressure on the land, such as overgrazing.
- Kept blacks politically inactive due to stringent requirements according to property and income.

#### Industrial Conciliation Act

- It led to low salaries for blacks.
- Denied blacks the right to join trade Unions.
- Reserved higher paying jobs for the whites (skilled and semi-skilled).

- Restricted skilled training to whites.

### **The land Husbandry Act**

- It limited land ownership among Africans in reserves to between 5-8 acres of land per person and this led to poor harvests and lower productivity as the Africans had little land in poor areas.
  - It limited the number of cattle per African to less than 12 in some cases to less than 6.
  - The limited number of cattle also impoverished the Africans.
  - The poverty drove Africans into towns and farms to look for employment.
16. Discuss The Causes Of The Slave Trade And Its Effects On The African Continent:

Slavery is the highest level of degrading another human being. Slavery is as ancient as human existence. Slave trade was the capture and sale of, especially of Africans by Arabs and Europeans to Asia, Europe, South and North America and the Caribbean's. Slavery and Slave Trade in Africa began about 700 A.D. and lasted until 1805. Biblically slave trade existed, that is, Pyramids in Egypt were built through slave labour.

### **Causes Of Slave Trade**

European labour was consolidated to be unsuitable because:

- The European Population was sparse and it was felt that it should be allowed to grow bigger.
- The Industrialists needed the European labour to work in the mines and industries, which were expanding fast.
- Exporting labour from Europe at that time would have had a negative effect on the infant capitalist economy.

### **The Indigenous Population Of The Las Americas Was Deemed Unsuitable Because:**

- It had been reduced drastically as a result of its first contact with Europeans because it was not immune to the new diseases such as small pox brought by these strangers.
- Much of the indigenous population, which was enslaved, failed to adapt to the rigorous life of slave trade.

### **Africans Were Favoured Because They**

- Were accustomed to settled farming and mining societies with discipline labour demands.
- It was believed that they were strong and industrious.
- Africans had been in contact with Europeans for a long time and had developed immunity to some diseases brought by the whites.

### **Effects Of Slave Trade On The African Continent**

Estimated total numbers of slaves translocated is about 15 000 000 lives.

- It promoted civil Wars amongst African Kingdoms to unbelievable levels.
- Great reduction of population in Africa.
- Loss of African labour force (the young able-bodied men and women were the target).
- Brain drain from Africa-the captured were farmers, miners, traders, artisans, entrepreneurs, etc. who were exported to Europe, Asia and the Las Americas.
- Established a system of International Trade where Africa exported human labour in exchange for whatever goods Europeans were prepared to sell.
- Entrenched capitalism as a world economic system whose terms of trade were controlled by Europeans.
- Sowed the roots of Africa's underdevelopment and dependence of goods manufactured in Europe.
- Provided resources for Europe's development.



- Gave birth to racism e.g. African's inferiority and European superiority.
  - Gave birth to Multi-National companies with branches and subsidiaries all over the world, trading monopolies who have a large influence on policies of their governments.

**17. 'Peace And Unity' Has Been In Existence Before Colonisation And Was More Consolidated In Zimbabwe. Evaluate This Statement In The Context Of The Existence Of The Pre-Colonial States With Specific Reference To The Political, Economic And Social Aspects Of The People.**

**Political Peace And Unity Existed Due To**

- Chiefs under Mambo and Mzilikazi showed allegiance (loyalty) to the capital ruler.
- Allegiance (loyalty) was in several ways depending on specialisation. i.e. hunters paid using the animal skins, ivory. Agriculturalist paid using agricultural labour, crops or grains; miners paid using minerals, e.t.c.
- The use of the advisory Council by the Mambo and Mzilikazi showed that peace and unity was consolidated since this was a traditional democratic system of governance, which involved other people.
- Power was decentralised, that is, it involved kraal heads, village chiefs, and e.t.c.
- The Dare concept consolidated peace in the sense that the Mambo /King would get advice from the People.
- The civilians supported the Army in maintaining Law & order.
- The use of many advisors & Ministers by the Mambo.
- Mambos and Kings were believed to represent God.

**Socially Peace and Unity Existed Due To**

- The non-existence of **classes** in the Shona society created peace and unity.
- Advisory Council was made up of the elders noted for their wisdom on traditional custom and History.
- Intermarriages brought peace and unity and increased the size of the clan.
- Religious ceremonies, which recognised the existence of Mwari the creator of all things whom all people worshipped. The Ndebele even adopted the Shona way of worshipping.
- Recognition of succession ceremonies.
- Zunde raMambo concept- it was the responsibility of the King to see to it that no one died of famine/drought. Again the concept encouraged collective work.
- Family was nucleus & was the foundation of the nation.

**Economically Peace & Unity Existed Due To**

- Collective ownership of wealthy, e.g. land and even the King redistributed the tribute.
- Payment of tribute, which the King redistributed during a drought or famine.
- Domestic and international trade.
- Subsistence farming/agriculture done when there was peace and unity.

**18. Discuss Any Five Effects Of Colonisation To Africa?**

**Negatives**

- Balance of trade disequilibria, that is, negative trade relations between Africa and European countries during and after colonisation through a new form of relationship called neo-colonialism
- Dependence on European Economies
- Underdevelopment of Africa since there was no technological transfer to facilitate industrialisation
- Cultural destruction
- Loss of individual and national identity by Africans during and after colonisation.
- Exploitation and depletion of Africa's natural resources without benefit to Africa or plundering of Africa's natural Resources

- Super enrichment and development of Europe and their extensions in Africa and Australia
- Loss of independence by Africans

### **Positives**

- Brought education through Mission Schools
- Infrastructural Development e.g. Communication lines
- Introduction of Modern medicine
- Christianity
- Civilisation

### **19. Trace The Development Of Mass Political Parties In Colonial Southern Rhodesia Between 1955 And 1963?**

**1955** – there was the development or formation of the City Youth League by impatient young politicians such as George Nyandoro, James Chikerema, Edson Sithole, among others. It organised protest marches

- **1957**- New ANC (African National Congress) was a merger between old ANC and the City Youth League led by Joshua Nkomo. It demanded majority rule. It organised mass resistance against the Land Husbandry Act urging Peasants not to cooperate with the settler government. In towns it organised mass protests and demonstrations. **1960**-January-National Democratic Party (**NDP**) was formed with Michael Mawema as President holding on for Joshua Nkomo. They demanded one-man one vote and majority rule, held mass demonstrations.
- **1961**-Constitution allowed the Blacks into Parliament and this divided the NDP as some were happy with the constitution and others were not/rejected it as inadequate. NDP was banned in 1961
- **1961**-Zimbabwe's African peoples Union (ZAPU) was formed with the same leadership as NDP. They encouraged Acts of arson and sabotage. Members agreed to remain as ZAPU even if it was banned. However, ZAPU split when Joshua Nkomo suspended some members, e.g. Malianga, Mugabe, Sithole and Takawira.
- **1963**-Zimbabwe African National Union (ZANU) was formed under the leadership of Ndabanengi Sithole and its first Secretary was R.G. Mugabe.

### **b) Why Did Africans In Southern Rhodesia Fail To Secure Independence By 1965?**

- Leaders put too much faith in Britain's ability to solve their problems.
- Britain was unwilling to give up a developed country like Rhodesia with a lot of white man's investment to inexperienced black rulers
- Southern Rhodesia was being ruled by white who were determined to continue ruling
- African political leaders were arrested and detained at a time others were being given independence
- UDI blocked any hope for independence

The federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland also strengthened the whites

### **Questions for discussion**

- Is there any truth in the often-heard statement that "African Kings of the 19<sup>th</sup> Century sold their Kingdoms to the Europeans for the love of goods from Europe?"
- Could the colonisation of Africa in 19<sup>th</sup> century have been prevented?
- Why was the Berlin Conference of 1884 - 5 held, and which countries participated, and what resolutions were made at this conference? What were the effects of these resolutions?
- Study the map of the partitioned Africa and identify the colonial powers of all the African states.

## **LEGAL AND PARLIAMENTARY STUDIES**

### **Law**

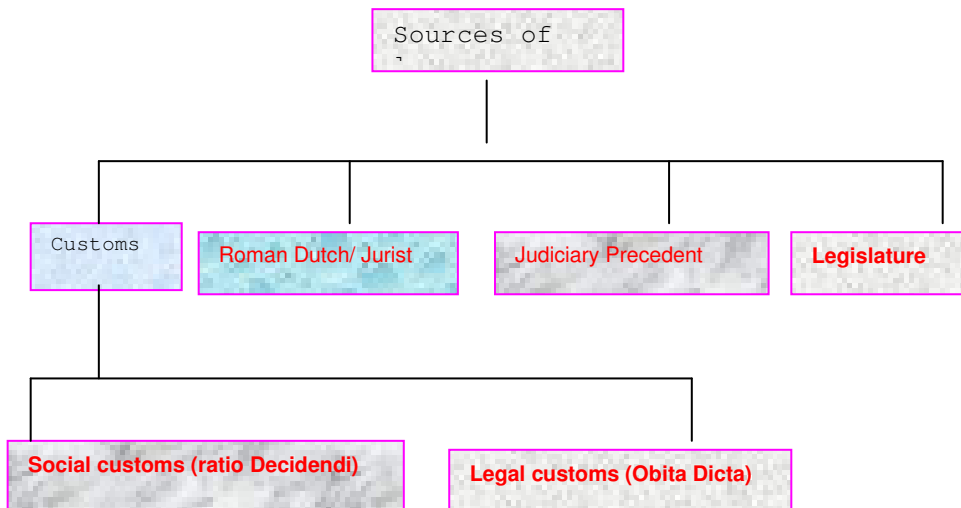
Generally law is defined as rules of behaviour enforced by the society or board of established norms for the good governance of the society, usually interpreted by the courts to enforce justice, consistence and uniform application. All law is premised on maintaining the status quos (those in power) and the advantages of the political and economic of those in authority.

## Purpose of the law

Realistically the purpose of the law is to protect the interest of those making the law. Idealistically the purpose of the law is to bring about law and order, predictability, stability and peace.

## Nature of law

A man is a social animal. The term society / community suggests behaviour patterns and norms in the society and become social customs with the passage of time and with constant reputation, they reach a stage where it becomes unthinkable that they should be broken up, for example, the need to wear clothes in the public places.



## Customs

The earliest stage was so-called "natural law" behaviour patterns developed by man to accord his instincts and the procedures or rules of conduct he adopted for the tribal survival in the environment. These earliest customs were simply habits of life, but with the passage of time and constant repetition, they reach a stage where it becomes unthinkable that they should be broken, for example, the need to wear clothes in public places. Customs during these first stages of "natural law", "habitual obedience is commonly referred to as "social customs" and is persuasive since it entails practices that **may** be observed and almost certainly will be observed but do not have to be observed. Legal custom is binding and authoritative in the sense that it entails duties, which **must** be observed and enforced by the society or State through the Parliament.

## Judicial Precedent

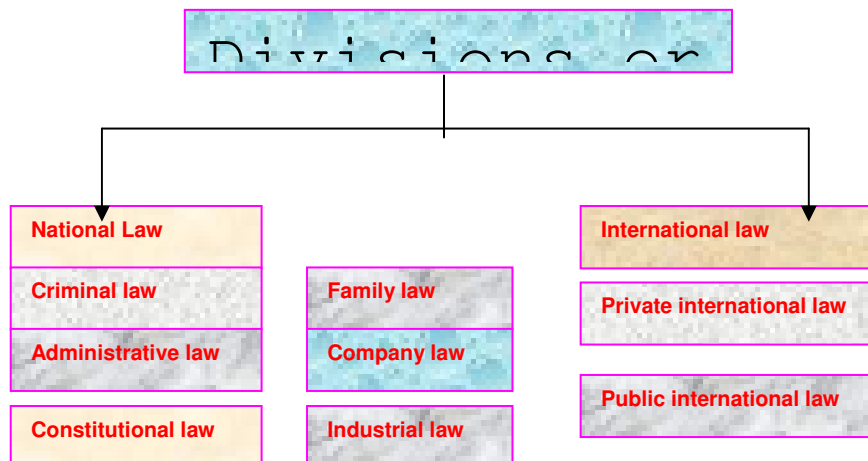
It is where a previous judicial decision in **a novel case** serves as a rule or guide for similar cases to be heard in the future. (In novel cases where a legal rule exists, a case may be decided on set precedents, that is, used judge's principles, prudence and wise counsel). Once a court has given a ruling concerning the legal position applicable

in a particular set of circumstances, this ruling becomes the law for the future. This principle is known as the doctrine of Stare Decisis, that is, to stay by the decisions and not disturb settled points. However, this doctrine follows the hierarchy of authority- previous decisions only bind later decisions if the earlier courts are superior to the latter, for example: the supreme courts binds all other courts but not itself, the high court binds all inferior courts, but not itself unless operating as lower courts with one judge and magistrates courts bind not even themselves (inferior of lower courts such as primary courts)

### Legislature /statute

Statutes are laws made by the legislature or Parliament and are governed by 5 basic principles of modern laws: **Just application**-for example, legal rules, "must direct what is honourable and forbid what is base". **Equality** –law must be blind to distinctions of class, wealth, colour or creed, race, which means all citizens are equal before the law. **Uniformity**-law must behave uniformly or consistently, that is, not only with regards to people but also to areas. **Authority** –law must only derive from the proper and authorised such as the Parliament or Municipalities. **Certainty**- legal rules must not only be clear and unambiguous, they must also be declared and made known before they are applied. Hence retrospective or "ex-post -factor" legislation is almost universally condemned though unavoidable. This certainty about the future is essential if people are to be free to decide their Actions with the full knowledge of the consequences. And is also necessary if the legal rules are to apply which "**Ignorantia juris excusat**", "Ignorance of the law excuses no one". The law making process through Parliament, crafting of binding rules of law in a precise well-defined form by a body legally constituted. (A person or body of persons having power to pass laws that keeps pace with the changing conditions in a community.) Creates laws known as Acts or Statutes and it has the power to amend or repeal / cancel laws already in existence. It is the most important and modern sources of law. Also has statutory instruments or subsidiary legislation, which are enactments that provide for detailed Administration of the Act and implementation of Principles, involved, e.g. Rules Proclamations, By-laws, Orders and Notices. Debate and passed by Parliament, Acts, Statutory Instruments Proclamations, By-Laws, Delegated Authorities, Orders, Statutes etc.

**Roman Dutch/ Jurists:** Jurists are legal writers who on the basis of widespread reference to their opinions by the courts and elsewhere are regarded as authorities on the law. Their importance should not be underestimated; for example, it is the jurists of principals that Roman law owes its fame and its influence on subsequent generations. The Roman Dutch law is a function of the ancient Roman law and Dutch customary practices. Roman Law spread with the spread of the Roman Empire. Thus as the Romans occupied the Netherlands, they spread their law which got infused with Dutch customs producing Roman Dutch Law. When the Dutch colonised the Cape in 1652, they made the Roman and Dutch law the law of the land. Roman and Dutch law was spread to Zimbabwe by the BSAC, which had been asked by the High Commissioner at the Cape to make it law of the colony. Although we call it Roman-Dutch Law in Zimbabwe, it also has traits of the English law for example, Insurance law, Banking Law and Company Law, etc.



Civil private law

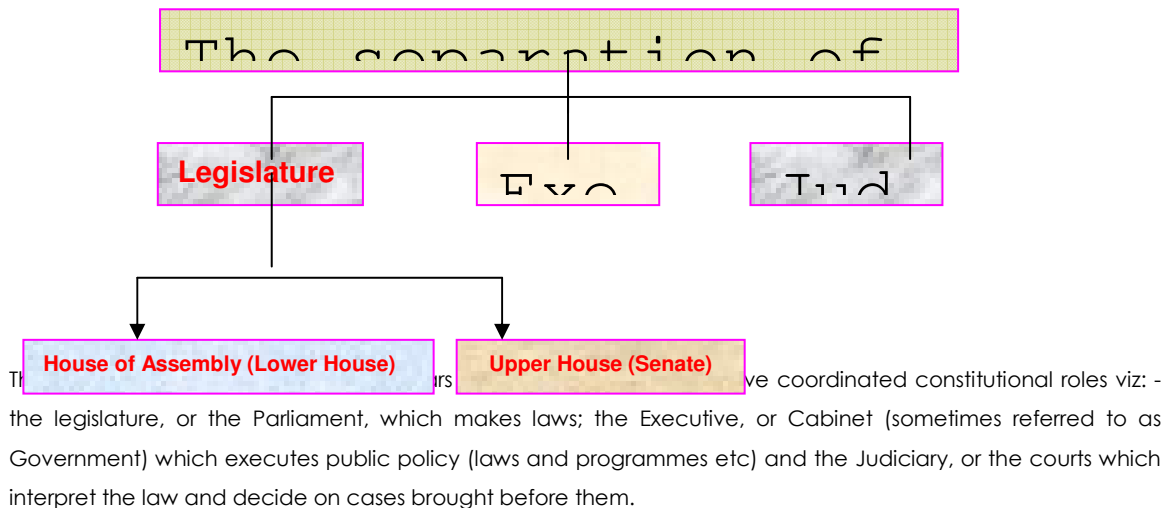
Commercial law

Law of treaties

**National law** is the body of rules and regulations that govern the behaviour of citizens of or within a specific country. National law has law enforcing agencies while **international law** is that law which regulates between States and is based on conventions, treaties, however it has no law enforcing agents.

## THE CONSTITUTION

The constitution is the supreme law in the country and most countries have written constitutions, Zimbabwe included. The UK. Stands out as the odd case that has no clear document written and termed a constitution. A constitution is the body or rules and regulations that set out the authorities of those in power. It also sets out the rights and duties of citizens. It is important because it establishes the institutions, which make up the State. These are the Executive, the Judiciary and the Legislature.



## Composition of the Parliament (Lancaster House Constitution)

Parliament is the law making body of the State institutions; it also carries out some equally important functions. Parliament is the forum where the nation's representatives debate national issues including critical examinations of the Government's execution of public policy. This is how the legislature on behalf of the electorate holds the executive accountable. The Parliament of Zimbabwe is now a Bi-cameral Parliament, which is divided into the Lower House and the Upper House.

### The Lower House (House of Assembly)

There are 150 Members of Parliament, who can be divided as follows: 120 Constituent Members who are elected by the people registered in the Common Voter's Role, 10 Governors-Appointed by the President, 8 chiefs –who are appointed by the Chief's Council, 12 Non-Constituent Members- who are Appointed by the President.

### Functions

- To legislate / to make laws.
- To debate on matters of public interests, national and international issues.
- To control Government finance.
- To monitor administration of line ministries.
- To represent the electorate.

## THE SENATE

### Introduction:

The Constitution of Zimbabwe Amendment Bill No.17 provides for the constituting of Parliament as a **Bicameral** legislature consisting of the House of Assembly of 150 members and Senate of 66 members.

### Composition:

- Of the 66 members, 5 are elected in each of the 10 provinces [50].
- Plus the President and Deputy President of the Council of Chiefs.
- 8 Chiefs elected by the College of Chiefs Council to represent the 8 non-metropolitan provinces.
- Remaining 6 are Appointed by the President and these represent special interest groups.

### Qualification to be elected as a senator

One shall be eligible for election as a senator if he / she is a registered voter, above the age of 40 years and must be or must have been a member of the Senate or the House of Assembly but who must not be a member of the cabinet, deputy Minister or provincial governor.

### Functions and roles of the Senate

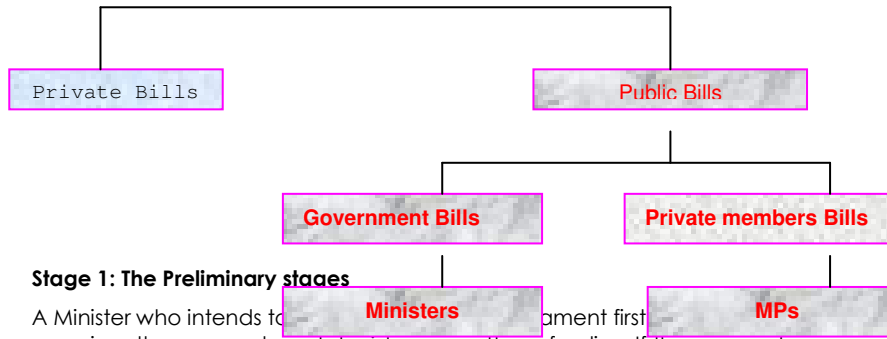
- The Upper House (Senate) has a broader mandate to utilise the Senator's experience to ensure that any laws that are passed are in the ultimate national interest.
- The Senate is the custodian of certain national values and principles that may have been overlooked, forgotten, or unknown to the members of the lower House.
- The Senate is a safeguard for prudence and an assurance that all interest, including those that are not fully represented in the Lower House, are represented in the legislative process.
- The Senate provide checks and balances, which help prevent the passage into law of ill-conceived legislation.
- It is a safeguard against hastily authored legislation that may not be in the national interest.

## THE LAW MAKING PROCESS IN ZIMBABWE

There are basically two types of the Bills, namely the Private Bills and Public Bills. Private Bills can be defined as those Bills that have a particular interest or benefit to any person or group of persons, public company, corporations or local authority. Such Bills can only be introduced into the House of Parliament after a petition and a copy of the proposed Bill has been presented and adopted. On the other hand Public Bills relate to matters of general interest, are introduced upon notice, by a member of Parliament/ Minister. Public Bills are further divided into Government Bills and Private Members' Bills. Government Ministers pilot the former through Parliament while an individual Member of Parliament can introduce the latter.

Bill

|



A Minister who intends to introduce a Bill in Parliament first presents it to the cabinet. The cabinet examines the proposals and decides on matters of policy. If the proposals are accepted, the relevant Minister is directed to prepare a Bill on the broad lines. The Minister concerned then instructs the Ministry officials to prepare the proposed Bill. The Ministry Officials in turn send a memorandum to the Draftsman containing a general description of the scope of the proposed Bill as well as its terms of reference. Acting upon the suggested guidelines, the draftsman, then draws up a Bill. This draft Bill is printed and subsequently laid down before the cabinet committee on legislation for consideration and approval. The cabinet usually consists of five cabinet Ministers assisted by professionals. The Minister of Justice, Legal and Parliamentary affairs chair the committee. In its deliberations, the committee usually seeks the advice of officials within the Ministry of Justice; besides they also consult the central committee of the ruling party to ensure that the legislation is consistent with the Government policy.

## Stage 2: First Reading:

Before a Bill is introduced into the Parliament, the Minister in charge notifies the House of his intention to do so on a particular day. The Bill is then placed on the order paper for the specific day. The Minister then calls upon the House to consider the Bill on a specified day. On this day to present his Bill the secretary reads short title of the Bill. There is no debate during the first reading of the Bill. Normally time is allowed for members and interested persons to read and digest the Bill; discuss it with their colleagues and constituencies and to prepare for the second reading. In essence, therefore the purpose of the first reading of a Bill is to give members and interested persons an opportunity to study the Bill.

## Stage 3: Second Recording

On a specified day for the second reading, the Minister in charge explains the principle of the Bill. He also explains the key issues of policy involved and concludes by moving "that the Bill be read a second time". This motion is followed by a debate on the general principles of the Bill. However, no discussion on matters of detail is permitted. The members restrict themselves to consideration of the general application and desirability of the Bill. It is out of order to move amendments to the Bill itself at this stage. Nevertheless amendments may be proposed not to the Bill, but the motion, "that the Bill be read a second time" the usual amendment is "that the Bill be read a second time upon this day six months", which is regarded as the a courteous way of dismissing the Bills. If this amendment is carried, the Bill is dead and buried and cannot be revived until the next session. If there is much opposition to the Bill, the Minister in charge and the Government may consider it wiser to withdraw the Bill than to force it through. Once the Bill receives its second reading, it is ready for the Committee Stage.

## Stage 4: The Committee Stage

The purpose of the committee stage is to consider the Bill in detail. The whole House goes into committee. Thus the function of the committee on a Bill is to go through the text clause by clause. The guiding principles during these detailed deliberations is that the committee should make such amendments in the Bill as may seem likely to render it more generally acceptable. The procedure involves putting every clause separately to the committee. The clause may be accepted, amended, or rejected, with or without debate. Although the committee has fairly free a hand in dealing with the Bill, it suffers certain limitations. Firstly, it is bound by the decision taken by the House to accept the principles of the Bill. This means that the committee should refrain from amending the Bill in a manner that is sharp conflict with that decision. However, if it happens that the cumulative effect of amendments is such that the nature and purpose of the Bill are wholly changed. In such circumstances it is the general practice to withdraw the Bill after report of the committee. Although the committee has authority to amend any clause of a Bill, it cannot reject or through out a Bill. Only the House can reject the Bill.

### Stage 5: Report

If a Bill has been referred to a committee of the whole House and no amendments have been made, the report stage is purely formal before the third reading is undertaken. If amended, the amendments are considered and adopted by the House before the third reading takes place. At this stage the committees' recommendations are either accepted or rejected. Thus, the report stage ensures that the Bill, in its final form, represents the opinion of the majority of the House, and not merely that of the committee. To archive this, the House may make further amendments or even insert new clauses. The latter is usually done at the instance of the Minister in charge of the Bill to accommodate criticisms made in committee with which he is sympathetic.

### Stage 6: Third Reading

The third reading of the Bill is taken, as a rule if the report stage has been completed. Debate follows the motion by the Minister in charge "that the Bill is now read a third time." the debate at this stage is usually very limited and normally reverts to discussions of principles. In addition, no amendments can be effected to the text of the Bill, except for purely verbal and minor amendments relating to type and drafting errors. Opposition to the motion for the third reading is expressed by amendments similar to those moved on the second reading. If the motion for the third reading is carried, the Bill is deemed to have completed its stages and is now ready for further scrutiny by the Senate.

### Stage 7: The Senate [see above under the Senate]

### Stage 8: The Presidential Assent and Enrolment Of The Act:

When an Act has been duly passed in terms of the provisions of the constitution or standing orders, it is presented to the President for the Assent. The President grants his Assent by a copy of the Act and the attachment of the Public Seal. The President in terms of the constitution must sign the Act within twenty-one days of its presentation to her/him. Where the President withholds his/ her Assent, to the Bill, the Bill shall be returned to Parliament and subject to the provision of the subsection 3 (b) the Bill shall not again be presented for Assent (chapter 51 subsections 3(a)). After the Presidential Assent the clerk of Parliament shall cause a fair copy of the Act, duly authenticated by the signature of the President and the Public seal to be enrolled on record in the office of the registrar of the high court and such copy shall be conclusive evidence of the provision of such Act (chapter 53(1)). The Act is then published in the Government Gazette. An Act of Parliament comes into operation on the day it is published in the gazette or on such other day as may be specified in or under that or some other Act. A Bill can only be deemed to have been passed by Parliament once it has gone through all the stages referred to above and been passed by both House.

### Importance of Elections

- Provide a mechanism for peaceful and legitimate competition for Political power and Authority.
- Give citizens the opportunity to participate in the Governance and Development of their community or country.
- Make elected leaders and their representatives accountable to the people.
- Give legitimacy to Governments.
- Provide peace and stability necessary for the development of a community or country.

### Parliamentary terms:

- **Motion** – Is a proposed topic presented/moved for debate. A notice is given before the motion is moved.
- **Bill** –Is a proposed legislation for public or private interests. There are public Bills and private Bills.
- **Mace** – This is the symbol of authority for the House of Assembly, the Speaker of Parliament uses it.
- **Act** – Is a legal item or statute enacted through Parliament and signed by his excellence.
- **Caucus** –Is a place where party business is discussed in the House. The chief whip chairs caucus motions.
- **Hansard** – is the official publication of Parliament, produced in verbatim, all the discussion, motions and debates in the House of Assembly
- **Order Paper** – It is also referred to as the agenda for the House of Assembly. It shows the votes and proceedings of the House.
- **Standing Order** – An order/ rule procedure set to govern the proceedings of the House at large. Assembly and or Parliament at large
- **Parliamentary privilege** – Is a privilege granted to members of Parliament to protect them from legal course as long as their behaviour or Actions are in the interest or said during Parliamentary proceedings



- **Precedent** –Is a ruling for future reference, where a situation occurs and there are no standing rules and orders governing or stipulating otherwise on a certain case or process. The leader of the House often sets such precedents during votes and proceedings of the House.
- **Election**- can be defined as a contest in which individuals freely choose, by secret ballot, the leaders and representatives they want.
- **Voters**-these are individuals that are given the opportunity to choose from various candidates representing different political parties-multipartism.

### **Chief Whip**

Is member of a party whose responsibility is to carry out the functions of a whip on behalf of the party, responsible for the organisation of the party in the House, ensuring the maximum practicable attendance of the members of the party and maintain party discipline, promoting support for the party business in the House and determining how the party should vote to a particular proposal, maintaining a quorum of supporters for the business the party is interested in how to behave towards the business of Parliament, call for party caucus meetings on Parliamentary business that require / needs party consultations and party whipping of the members.

### **Speaker**

The office of the Speaker is the highest and the most important to the House. The Speaker occupies the foremost place and commands respect internally from Parliamentarians and also externally from the general public. The election of the Speaker is provided for in the constitution of the country. Members of Parliament, elect the Speaker at the first sitting of new Parliament. The candidate for Speaker ship should be a person who would have once been or is a current Member of Parliament can qualify for elections as Speaker.

### **Terms of office of the Speaker**

The term of office of the Speaker is as long as life of the Parliament, which is five years. The Speaker can be re-elected at the end of the 5 years term. The constitution does not limit the number of times the Speaker can be re-elected.

### **Duties of the Speaker**

He is the presiding officer of the Parliament and as such must Act both with authority and impartiality, he is the one who runs Parliamentary proceedings, he maintains order, puts questions after debate and conducts divisions (voting in the House), he interprets and applies the standing orders and practices of the House by making rulings and decisions, he is the mouth piece of the House, conveying messages and addresses from the House to the State President, he is also responsible for holding the rights and privileges of the members and the House, he is responsible for the overall direction of Parliament and is advised by the clerk of Parliament.

### **Leader of the House**

The leader of the House is a Government Minister appointed by the State President and is responsible for the arrangement and management of Government business in either House of Parliament. The leader of the House in consultation with the presiding officers, the chief whip and the Ministers determines the order in which Government business will be dealt with in the House, and ensure that as far as possible, the passage of Government business is not unduly delayed or disrupted. The leader of the House is also responsible for moving procedural motions on behalf of the Government. In short the leader of the House attends to the following:

- Arranges the business of the House
- Protects and to some extent defines the position of the Government in the House
- Helps determine the scope and content of the legislative programme for the session as well as the businesses of the week
- Moving of the motion for the adjournment of the House
- Responsible for moving formal motions such as motions of condolences, paying tribute.

### **Sergeant-At –Arms**

**These are officers whose duties fall under the clerk; they carry special duties for the President of the Senate and the Speaker of the House of assembly that warrant a special mention. Their duties are associated mainly with the ceremony of Parliament and preservation of order. Bearing the mace on their right shoulder, one for each**

**House, the sergeant –at-arms precedes the presiding officers into the House of Parliament and announces the President of the Senate and the Speaker of the House of assembly respectively to the members. The sergeant – at- arms duties include: -**

- Records attendances of members
- Responsibility for security
- Escort suspended members
- House keeping duties
- Carries the mace
- Leads the Speakers processions

### **The Declaration Of Rights**

This is provided for in chapter three of the constitution. The declaration of rights is inspired by the universal declaration of rights as proclaimed by the United Nations in 1948. The declaration of rights sets out the fundamental rights and freedoms of the individual. However, these rights and freedoms are not absolute, but are subject to certain limitations. Everyone in Zimbabwe can enjoy the fundamental rights and freedoms, which are provided in the constitution. In exercising these rights and freedoms, individuals should respect the rights and freedoms of others and take into account public interests.

### **Protection of right to life**

Everyone one has the right to life. A person may be deprived of his life only if he has been convicted of a criminal offence and is subsequently sentenced to death or lawfully in the circumstances permitted by the law. A person is not considered to have been deprived of his life unlawfully under the following circumstances: -he / she is killed by the law enforcement agents whilst they are defending another person or protecting property, or if he /she is killed as a result of force used in order to carry a lawful arrest or to stop a person who is lawfully detained from escaping, or if he /she is killed during an attempt to suppress a riot or disperse an unlawful gathering, or if he/she is killed whilst is being prevented from committing a criminal offence , or if he is killed during a War.

### **Protection of right to personal liberty**

No person can be arrested, imprisoned, detained, expelled from the country without lawful reason. The law permits deprivation of personal liberty where, for, example: -there is an order of the court, or the person deprived of his liberty has committed or is about to commit a criminal offence; or the person is in sane and of no fixed abode and needs treatment or rehabilitation; or the person has entered into Zimbabwe unlawfully or is being deported from Zimbabwe or it is necessary to prevent the spread of an infectious or contagious disease.

### **Protection from slavery and forced labour**

Slavery and slave trade is prohibited in Zimbabwe. No body has the right to treat another person as a slave and no body must be treated as a slave. This protection does not prevent labour as part of a sentence imposed by a court, labour for members of disciplined forces and labour during times of public emergency.

### **Protection from inhuman treatment**

No body has the right to torture or treat another person in a manner that is inhuman or degrading. Under the constitution however, certain situations or Acts are not considered as being inhuman or degrading under the following circumstances:-moderate corporal punishment inflicted on person under the age of 18 years by a parent or guardian of headmaster of a school; or moderate corporal punishment of a male person under the age of 18 years in the execution of a judgement or court order; or hanging as a method of execution and delays in carryout the death sentence.

### **Protection from deprivation of property**

Property includes possessions, land, houses, money and every item that is capable of commercial change. No person may be deprived of his/ her property and no property may be compulsorily acquired unless: - the acquisition is in terms of the law made by Parliament; and the law require that the person from whom it is acquired gets fair compensation in reasonable time; and the person can go to court for decision on the amount of the compensation. Property may be compulsorily acquired fro the following reasons, among others; - land and other property may be acquired by the State for resettlement or for other public purposes; property

may be appropriated in time of the public emergency; acquisition of property is allowed, subject to limitations, for such things as: - payments of rates and taxes; forfeiture of property for breach of a law; forfeiture of property under a contract, for example, for not paying mortgage; the attachment of property in execution of a civil judgement; the acquisition of books from the national archives; the impounding of stray animals and the holding of property for the purposes of administration of deceased estates.

### **Protection from arbitrary search**

No person may be searched or have his/ her premises searched or entered into unless the search is in the interest of defence, public safety, public order, public morality, public health or town and country planning. The circumstances under which a person may be searched and under which someone may lawfully enter another's property without their consent. These include: - the searching of children by their parents; investigation of crimes; the acquisition of property in terms of the law; the entering premises for purposes of rates and taxes by a local authority.

### **Protection of the law**

Under the constitution every person has the right to:- a fair hearing within reasonable time by an independent or an impartial court; be presumed innocent until proved guilty or upon his own plea of guilty; defend oneself in court, and at his expense by a legal practitioner of his choice; to be informed in a large he understands and in detail of the nature of the offence or charge; to be given adequate time and facilities for preparation of his defence; be tried only once for the same offence; and get the services of an interpreter free of charge during court proceedings.

### **Protection of freedom of conscience**

This provision enshrines: - freedom of thought; freedom of religion; the right not to be forced to take an oath in conflict with his beliefs; and the right of a religious community to give religious instructions at a school run by that community.

### **Protection of freedom of expression**

The right entitles one to hold opinions and to express these opinions to others and no one should forbid anyone from exercising this right. This also includes freedom from interference with one's correspondence. Parliament may make laws limiting these rights for the purposes of:-protecting the interest of defence, public safety, public health, public order, public morality and the economic interest of the State; the protection of reputations, rights and freedoms of other people; preventing the disclosure of information received in confidence; and regulating telephones or broadcasting.

### **Protection of freedom of assembly**

Every person has the right to organise peaceful meetings and to take part in meetings in a peaceful way. It is also every person's right to associate with others who share his interests and to form, or belong to a political party, trade union, burial society or professional organisation. It is wrong to force some one to belong to a society or group. However, there are limitations to the enjoyment of the freedom of assembly and association. Situations where the freedom may be limited include the following: - where the parents control the right of association of their children; where laws passed in the interest of defence, public safety, public health, public order, public morality and the economic interest of the State; and where laws passed require the registration of companies or partnerships, political parties or trade unions, are not required to register.

### **Protection of freedom of movement**

Every Zimbabwean has the right to enter and leave Zimbabwe, and to move freely within Zimbabwe. A Zimbabwean may not be expelled from Zimbabwe. The right is exercised subject to the following limitations; - the lawful detention of a person; restrictions imposed in the interests of defence, public health, public morality; restrictions imposed on convicted persons or on persons awaiting trial or extradition; restrictions imposed on non-citizens or on people who are not permanent residents; and restrictions on the right of residence in communal land of people who do not belong to the local tribe.

### **Protection from discrimination**

This section provides that no person shall be treated in a discriminatory manner by any person acting by virtue of any written law or in performance of the functions of any public office or any public authority. No law may discriminate on the ground of gender, race, tribe, place of origin, political opinions, colour or creed. The constitution allows some form of discrimination as follows: - laws relating to adoption, marriage, divorce and other family and personal matters; the application of the customary law in cases between Africans only; non-citizens and persons who are not permanent residents in Zimbabwe may be required to have work permits.

### Enforcement of protective provisions

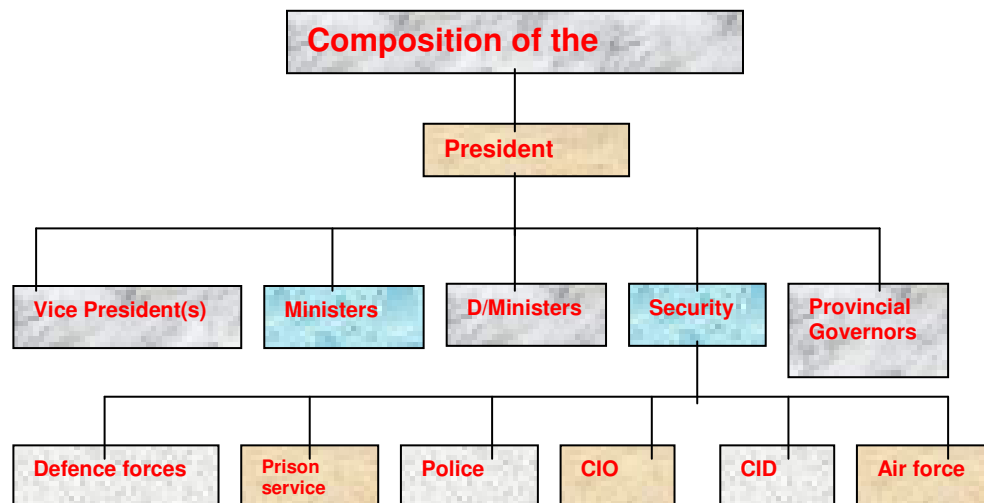
If any person has reason to believe that his rights under the declaration of rights are being or are likely to be contravened, he or she may apply to the supreme court on his / her behalf. A person may also ask a judge of the high court or magistrate or other presiding officers at any other court to refer to the supreme court any question about a positive violation of the declaration of rights.

### Public order

Public order refers to a situation in the nation when every individual is able to exercise his /her constitutional rights without infringing or interfering with the rights of others or endangering State Security and National Sovereignty by championing blatantly clear foreign interest that seek to reverse the gains of independence and self rule and by so doing compromising State National Sovereignty. Democracy is therefore a qualified and subjective term that does not give licence to any individual or group or political party the right to exploit situational hurdles in the history of Zimbabwe to compromise national sovereignty and the ethos of the preservation of freedom. If and when that happens, the custodian of the nation, the Army and every patriotic Zimbabwean, should by all means available, defend the nation and democratic rights can and should be suspended until such a time as these are compatible with our historical aspirations. Public order therefore entails the capability of self-censorship with the respect to the exercise of individual constitutional rights especially the rights of expression, speech, assembly and association. In the later case, the constitution cannot be read to mean that belonging or associating with a subversive organisation or unpatriotic party or ill association whose interests are to destabilise peace, order and security is a right guaranteed by the constitution.

### Executive

The President who shall be head of State and head of Government and Commander in Chief of the defence forces heads the executive. The President shall take precedent over all other persons in Zimbabwe.



### Qualification and election of the President

A person shall be qualified for elections as President if he /she is a citizen of Zimbabwe by birth or by decent and he/she has attained the age of 40 years and she/ he is ordinarily resident in Zimbabwe. He /she must be elected by voters registered on the common voters roll.

### Tenure of office (Lancaster House Constitution)

The term of office of the President shall be a period of 6 years provided that; the President shall continue in office until the person elected as President at the next election of President assumes office. The President may resign his/ her office by logging his/her resignation in writing with the Speaker. The President shall cease to hold office if a report prepared by a committee of Parliament, appointed by the Speaker upon the request of not

less than a third of the members of Parliament has recommended the removal of the President on the following grounds; that he has acted in wilful violation of this constitution (impeachment of the President) or that he is incapable of performing the functions of his office by reason of physical or mental incapacity.

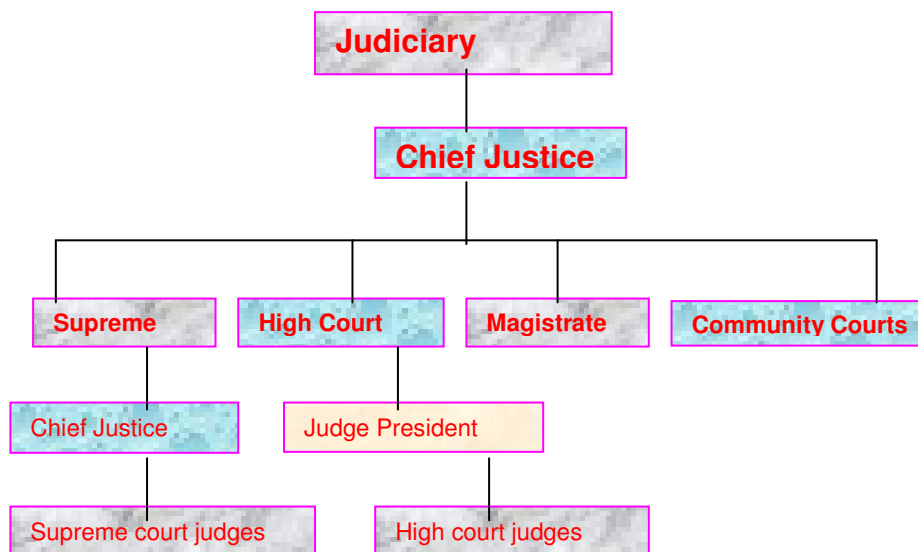
### The Executive functions

It shall be the duty of the President to uphold this constitution and ensure that the provisions of the constitution and of all other laws in force in Zimbabwe are faithfully executed. The President shall have powers as are conferred upon him by the constitution. Without prejudice the President shall have the power to appoint, accredit, receive and recognise diplomatic agents and consular officers and to enter into international conventions, treaties and agreements and to proclaim and to terminate martial law and declare War and to make peace and confer honours and precedence. The President shall act on the advice of the cabinet, except in cases where he is required to by this constitution. The President shall not be obliged to Act on the advice of the cabinet with respect to the dissolution of the Parliament or the appointment or removal of a Vice-President or any Minister or deputy Minister, the assignment or reassignment of functions to the vice – President or Minister or deputy Minister, the appointment of members of Parliament or any other person.

### Presidential immunity

The President shall not while in office be personally liable to any civil or criminal proceedings whatsoever.

## JUDICIARY



The judiciary is one of the three pillars of Government and is concerned with the administration of justice and ensuring that constitutional rights are protected. It exercises its functions independently of the other two pillars of Government, which is, the Executive and the Legislature.

### Supreme court

**This is the highest court in the country. It hears appeals from the high court and all lower courts. It only sits as a court of first instance when it hears arguments on whether or not there has been a violation of the declaration of rights. It consists of the Chief Justice who is also the head of the judiciary system and judges of the Supreme Court**

### High Court

It hears serious cases (such as murder, treason, armed robbery) as a court of first instance and appeals to the Supreme Court. Both civil and criminal cases can be heard in the high court. The High Court can also hear appeals from magistrates' court in criminal cases where the appeal is against conviction or sentence. In civil cases, it can hear appeals and also review decisions of inferior courts and administrative tribunals where it is alleged there were some irregularities in the conduct of the proceedings.

## Magistrates' court

Magistrates' courts hear both civil and criminal cases. The ranks of magistrates are; Ordinary magistrates simply referred to as magistrates, senior magistrates, provincial magistrates and regional magistrates. The rank of the magistrates determines the criminal jurisdiction he or she can exercise. The maximum jurisdiction in the magistrates' courts ordinarily is \$12 000.00 or seven years imprisonment. However, a statute may confer special jurisdiction, which is higher than this.

## The role of the judiciary

The main function of the judiciary is to hear cases and determine dispute brought before the courts. In the exercises of this function, it interprets the law that is enacted or passed by Parliament. Once the judiciary has interpreted the law, the interpretation becomes binding. The judiciary upholds the constitution. People who allege that their rights under the declaration of rights have been breached or violated can approach the Supreme Court for redress. The cases determined by the judiciary are in two broad category, that is the civil and criminal. In criminal cases the dispute is between the State and the individual. The individual is prosecuted before the magistrates' courts or high court depending on the seriousness of the case. If convicted he or she is imprisoned or ordered to pay a fine or both. One may also go under community service or if one is a juvenile can receive corporal punishment. Examples of criminal offences are theft, fraud, robbery, rape, murder, and e.t.c. In civil cases the dispute is between individuals or an individual and the State. The party found liable may be asked or ordered to pay compensation in the form of what is legally known as " damages' ". Examples of civil cases are seduction, maintenance, and claim for payment or debt.

## Qualification of judges

A person shall not be qualified as a judge of the supreme court or high court unless; he is / has been a judge of a court having unlimited jurisdiction in civil or criminal matters in a country in which the common law is Roman – Dutch or English and English is an official language or if he/she has been for not less than seven whether continuously or not qualified to practice as a legal practitioner in Zimbabwe or in a country in which the common law is Roman -Dutch and English s an official language.

## Appointment of judges

The President shall appoint the Chief Justice and other judges of the Supreme Court and the high court after consultation with the judicial service commission. If the chief justice or a judge of the Supreme Court or high court is not consistent with any recommendation made by the judicial service commission the President shall cause Parliament to be informed as soon as it is practicable.

## Tenure of office of judges

A judge of the Supreme Court or high court shall retire when he/she attains the age of 54years unless, before he /she attains that age he /she has elected to retire on attaining the age of 70years.

## Removal of judges from office

A judge of the Supreme Court or the high court may be removed from office only for inability to discharge the functions or duties of his office. Whether arising from the physical damage of body or mind or misbehaviour and shall not be so removed except with the previsions of this constitution. If the President considers that the question of removal from office of the chief justice ought to be investigated, the President shall appoint a tribunal to enquire in the matter. If in the case of a judge of the high court or the supreme court other than the chief justice, the chief justice advises the President that the question of the removal from office of the judge concerned ought to be investigated, for example, Justice George Paradza's case

## QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS (LEGAL & PARLIAMENTARY)

1. The highest legislative authority in the land is:
  - a. **Parliament**
  - b. Judiciary
  - c. Constitution
  - d. Executive
2. The legislative arm of government has the responsibility of:
  - a. Implementing the law
  - b. Interpreting the law
  - c. **Formulating the law**
  - d. Enforcing the law

3. A Constitutional Bill must go through.....times before passing the Parliament:
  - a. 5
  - b. 1
  - c. 2
  - d. **3**
4. The Chief Ambassador of the House of Assembly is:
  - a. Leader of the House
  - b. Chief whip
  - c. Speaker
  - d. **Clerk**
5. The presiding Officer in the Parliament is:
  - a) The Administrative clerk
  - b) The Chief Whip
  - c) **The Speaker**
  - d) The Attorney general
6. The Legislative arm of the Government has the responsibility of:
  - a) Implementing the law
  - b) Interpreting the law
  - c) **Formulating the law**
  - d) Enforcing the law
7. Parliamentary proceedings are published in the:
  - a) **The Hansard**
  - b) Press
  - c) Journal
  - d) Text book
8. The "first – past - the – post" electoral system means:
  - a) **The winner takes all and is duly elected**
  - b) One man one vote
  - c) The ballot is the best way declared true
  - d) The majority's interests are declared true
9. One of the functions of the Chief Whip is:
  - a) **To secure the attendance of the member of the party**
  - b) To prepare the proposals in parliament
  - c) To sign the Bill presented to him
  - d) To approve government's expenditure
10. The golden mace place dons the table of the House
  - a) **Symbolises the authority of the speaker**
  - b) Symbolises the August House
  - c) Symbolises the importance of the members of the House
  - d) Symbolises many issues, which are to be debated
11. The term Whip, in Parliamentary Language applies to:
  - a) **A member of a particular party whose duty is to secure the attendance of the Party for the purpose of voting and all necessary occasions where attendance of members is most important**

- b) To lead debates in Parliament  
c) When a Member of Parliament cries in the Parliament  
d) Ensures that both Private and Public Bills goes through Parliament
12. The Chief Whip is elected:  
a) By the general public  
**b) By the Party Caucus**  
c) By the Speaker of Parliament  
d) Legal Parliamentary committee
13. One of the functions of the Chief Whip is to:  
a) Supervise and organise the sitting arrangement of all members in Parliament.  
b) Taking minutes for all the activities taking place in Parliament  
**c) The organisation of the Party in the House, ensuring the maximum practicable attendance of the members of the Party and maintain Party discipline in the House**  
d) He sometimes Act as the Deputy Speaker
14. Parliament is Presided over by the:  
a) The Chief Whip  
b) The President  
**c) The Speaker**  
d) The Senator
15. The House of Assembly refers:  
**a) The Parliament Chamber where debates take place**  
b) Government Printers  
c) Presidential House  
d) God's place
16. Sergeant-At-Arms:  
a) He commands the Army  
b) He is in charge of the police force  
**c) He is in charge of the security in the House**  
d) He Heads the department of security arms in the country
17. The Speaker of Parliament is elected by the:  
a) Members of the public  
b) The Executive  
**c) Members of the Parliament at the 1<sup>st</sup> sitting of a new Parliament**  
d) The Chief Whip
18. Comptroller and Auditor General's main duty is to:--  
**a) Examine, audit and report on behalf of the Parliament all the public accounts**  
b) Investigate any Action taken by the officer  
c) Supervise Parliament business  
d) Assist in Auditing Private Company's financial Statements
19. The Public debt shall be:  
**a) Charged upon the Consolidated Revenue Fund**  
b) Public Bills  
c) Treasury Bills  
d) International Monetary Fund
20. Attorney General shall:



- a) Shall be the advisor to the Supreme Court
  - b) Shall be the Principal Legal advisor to the Government**
  - c) He is part of the High court judges
  - d) Be elected into the office by the general public
21. The main function of the Executive is to:
- a) Make laws in Parliament
  - b) To make laws operational**
  - c) To interpret laws of the country
  - d) None of the above
22. The main function of the Parliament is to:
- a) Govern the Country
  - b) Shout at opposition members of Parliament
  - c) Make laws in the country**
  - d) Make laws operational
23. The main function of the Judiciary is to:
- a) Make laws in the country
  - b) Make laws Operational
  - c) Interpret the Laws of the country**
  - d) None of the above
24. A wilful intention to injure one's persona is treated as:
- a) Deformation
  - b) Blasphemy
  - c) Affray
  - d) Defamation**
25. The right to compensation of employees in Zimbabwe is enshrined in:
- a) Factories and Work Places Act
  - b) Labour Relations Act**
  - c) National social Security Authority Act
  - d) Compensation Act
26. An Act that States that all Companies should be registered through the registrar of companies is:
- a) The companies Act 28.03
  - b) The Companies Act 24.03**
  - c) Registrar and Dees Act 11.03
  - d) Enterprises Act 22.09
27. Public gatherings and functions should be held and bound as per provisions in:
- a) Public Order and Security Act**
  - b) Public Gatherings Act
  - c) Public Functions and Gathering Act
  - d) The Official Gathering Act
28. The Tenure of a constitutionally elected President is:
- a) 7years
  - b) 4years
  - c) 6years**

- d) 5 years
29. The Tribal Law and Custom of Africans is enshrined in:
- a) Public African Law
  - b) Customary Law**
  - c) African Customary Law
  - d) Tribal African Law
30. A document published by the Authority of Government of Zimbabwe is called:
- a) The Act
  - b) The Bill
  - c) The Government Gazette**
  - d) Hansard
31. The Legislature is:
- a) House of Assembly**
  - b) The Executive
  - c) The Judiciary
  - d) The Court
32. Any proclamation, rule, regulation, by-law, order or notice is called:
- a) A Legal Item
  - b) An Act of Parliament
  - c) A Statutory Instrument**
  - e) Rule of Law
33. A vote of no confidence in the Government must be supported by a resolution and by votes of:
- a) All members
  - b) Not less than 2/3 of all members of Parliament**
  - c) Half the members of parliament
  - d) The Cabinet
34. A committee that monitors the use of monies from the Consolidated Revenue funds [CRF] sanctioned by the Parliament is:
- a) Budget Committee
  - b) Committee of taxes
  - c) Committee of public accounts**
  - d) Inter-Ministerial Committee
35. A.....is held when a member dies, retires or resigns:
- a) Retirement election
  - b) By-election**
  - c) Parliamentary election
  - d) General election
6. The judicial arm of the United Nations is the:
- a) ICJ**
  - b) Security Council
  - c) Justice Bench
  - d) Labour Court

37. The President shall not while in office, be personally liable to any civil or criminal proceedings whatsoever in any court. This is termed:
- a) Presidential In criminality
  - b) Presidential In liability
  - c) Presidential Privilege
  - d) Presidential immunity**
38. Of the following, who is not elected by the people registered in the common voter's role?
- a) The Executive
  - b) The Legislature
  - c) The Senators
  - e) The Judiciary**
39. The age limit for any one being eligible to be voted as a constituent Member of Parliament is:
- a) 40 years
  - b) 18 years
  - c) 21 years**
  - d) 36 years
40. The age limit for any one being eligible to be voted as a Senator is:
- a) 60 years
  - b) 40 years and above**
  - c) 21 years
  - d) 18 and above
41. The symbol of Authority of the House is:
- a) The Oath Box
  - b) The Mace**
  - c) The Sword
  - d) The Public Seal
42. The word parliament came from the Greek term "Paler" which means:
- a) To legislate
  - b) To discuss
  - c) To make laws
  - d) To talk.**
43. The legal officer whose task is to prepare a case before trial and speak at all levels of court proceedings is:
- a) Witness
  - b) Solicitor
  - c) Barrister
  - e) Attorney**
44. The racial discrimination in Southern Africa was based on all of the following except?
- a) Double Pyramid Policy
  - b) Equality of Races**
  - c) Separation of Races
  - d) Horse and rider Policy
45. The following pieces of legislation were central in expropriation of land from the locals except?
- a) The Land Apportionment Act
  - b) The land Husbandry Act

- c) **The land Ownership Act**  
d) The land Tenure Act
46. When were the first shots leading to the second Chimurenga fired?  
a) April 1969  
b) April 1968  
c) April 1967  
d) **April 1966**
47. The scenario in world politics existing today where the USA is dominating the whole world is called.....  
a) Bipolarism  
b) **Unipolarism**  
c) Multipolarism  
d) Singularise
48. In which year was Iraqi invaded under George W. Bush?  
a) 2001  
b) 2002  
c) **2003**  
d) 2004

1. Most developing countries are said to be lawless countries by the developed States especially United States and United Kingdom. "The Rule of Law is a subjective Statement" Discuss

The rule of law is a subjective Statement because it depends on whose **interest/taste/side/opinion** you are, etc.

- Law is not universally acceptable.
- Rule of law refers to the Adherence to:
- Governance Principles.
- Democratic principles.
- Human rights recognition.
- Consistent application of legal instruments within a Sovereign State.
- The term rule of law becomes controversial.

N.B. Students to take **note** of the fact that developed countries have certain **interests** in the developing countries. Therefore students should identify those interests and then apply them in an attempt to answer the question. For example, third world leaders who do not adhere to the interests of the super powers are perceived lawless. Such leaders are then demonised by the west, could be removed from power, and in their place puppets leaders are installed. All this is done to further their interests.

- The following raw materials are in Great demand by the Developed world:
- Oil/petroleum in such countries like Iraq, Iran, Saudi Arabia (The Middle East).
- Uranium in Zimbabwe.
- Platinum in Zimbabwe.
- Diamonds in DRC.
- Rubber DRC.
- Gold.
- Land in Zimbabwe, etc.

Again consider the characteristics/principles that comprise or govern the rule of law, in such countries like Zimbabwe.

## 2. Describe the main functions of the Executive

- Executive Authority is vested in the President.
- He upholds the constitution.
- Appoints cabinet Ministers
- Has prerogative of mercy.
- Has the power to proclaim public emergencies.
- Appoints the judiciary.
- Represents the nation.
- Make laws through decrees
- He ascends to all legislation.

## 3. Describe the main sources of law:

### Customs law / Natural law

- These are behaviour patterns man developed according to his instincts and the rules of conduct he adopts to meet environmental challenges (social customs and legal customs that include African /Traditional Customs, Societal values, Norms, Beliefs, etc.)
- It is the constant application and repetition of habits that leads to the development of firm customs, which all members of the community are obliged to comply.
- Social customs show duties that **may** be obeyed
- Legal customs show duties that **must** be obeyed

### Judicial precedent

- It is where a previous judicial decision in **a novel case** serves as a rule or guide for similar cases to heard in the future. ( In novel cases where a legal rule exists, a case may be decided on set precedents, that is, used judge's principles, prudence and wise counsel.).
- Once court has given a ruling concerning the legal position applicable in a particular set of circumstances, this ruling becomes the law for the future.

### Legislation /statute

- The law making process through parliament, crafting of binding rules of law in a precise well-defined form by a body legally constituted. (A person or body of persons having power to pass laws that keep pace with the changing conditions in a community.)
- Creates laws known as Acts or statutes and it has the power to amend or repeal / cancel laws already in existence.
- It is the most important and modern sources of law
- Also has statutory instruments or subsidiary legislation, which are enactments that provide for detailed Administration of the Act and implementation of Principles, involved, e.g. Rules Proclamations, By-laws, Orders and Notices.
- Debate and passed by Parliament, Acts, Statutory Instruments Proclamations, By-Laws, Delegated Authorities, Orders, Statutes etc.

### Roman Dutch

- It is function of the ancient Roman law and Dutch customary practices.
- Roman Law spread with e spread of the Roman Empire. Thus as the Romans occupied the Netherlands, they spread their law which got infused with Dutch customs producing Roman Dutch Law.

- When the Dutch colonised the Cape in 1652, they made the Roman and Dutch law the law of the land.
- Roman and Dutch law was spread to Zimbabwe by the BSAC, which had been asked by the high Commissioner at the Cape to make it law of the colony
- Although we call it Roman- Law in Zimbabwe, it also has traits of the English law for example, Insurance law, banking law and Company Law, etc.

### 3. Discuss briefly the following parliamentary terms

- **Motion** – Is a proposed topic presented/moved for debate. A notice is given before the motion is moved.
- **Bill** –Is a proposed legislation for public or private interests. There are public Bills and private Bills.
- **Mace** – This is the symbol of authority for the House of Assembly, the Speaker of Parliament uses it.
- **Act** – Is a legal item or statute enacted through Parliament and signed by his excellence.
- **Caucus** –Is a place where party business is discussed in the House. The chief whip chairs caucus motions.
- **Hansard** – is the official publication of parliament, produced in verbatim, all the discussion, motions and debates in the House of Assembly
- **Order Paper** – It is also referred to as the agenda for the House of Assembly. It shows the votes and proceedings of the House.
- **Standing Order** – An order/ rule procedure set to govern the proceedings of the House at large. Assembly and or Parliament at large
- **Parliamentary privilege** – Is a privilege granted to members of Parliament to protect them from legal course as long as their behaviour or Actions are in the interest or said during parliamentary proceedings
- **Precedent** –Is a ruling for future reference, where a situation occurs and there are no standing rules and orders governing or stipulating otherwise on a certain case or process. The leader of the House often sets such precedents during votes and proceedings of the House.
- **Election**- can be defined as a contest in which individuals freely choose, by secret ballot, the leaders and representatives they want.
- **Voters**-these are individuals that are given the opportunity to choose from various candidates representing different political parties-multipartism.

5. Identify the three Arms of the State in Zimbabwe and discuss their functions:

#### Legislature

- To legislate / to make laws.
- To debate on matters of public interests, national and international issues.
- To control government finance.
- To monitor administration of line ministries.
- To represent the electorate.

#### Executive

- Maintain law and order.
- Government and administration.
- Protect sovereignty of the State.
- Decide on national issues in pursuance with public interest.
- Uphold democratic values and leadership.

#### Judiciary

- Put law into practice.
- Upholds justice.
- Ensures that enacted laws are constitutional.
- Guards the fundamental rights and liberties of the people of Zimbabwe.

- Ensures peace and social justice in the nation.

### **6. State And Explain Any Four Fundamental Rights And Freedoms Enshrined In The Constitution Of Zimbabwe:**

#### **Right To Freedom Of Expression**

- Freedom of speech, of opinion, free to express themselves to others; freedom from interference with one's correspondence. **May be limited.**
- To protect the interests of defence, public order and safety, morality and economic interests of the State.
- To protect reputation, rights and freedom of others.

#### **Freedom Of Movement**

- To move freely within Zimbabwe, not to be expelled from Zimbabwe, the right to enter and leave the country. **May be limited when:**
- A person is lawfully detained.
- Restrictions are in the interests of defence, public health and public morality.
- Restrictions are imposed on convicted persons.
- Restrictions are on non-citizens.

#### **Freedom of Assembly**

- Freedom to associate with any person of your choice, to associate with any political party, trade union or organisation of one's choice, the right to organise and to attend peaceful meetings. **This freedom may be limited:**
- Where parents control the right of association of their children.
- To protect the interests of public order, defence, public safety, and public morality – refer to POSA.

#### **Freedom of Conscience**

- Freedom of religion, freedom of thought, the right not to be forced at school to attend religious ceremonies other than his own, not to be forced to take an oath in conflict with his beliefs.

#### **N.B. Students could explain any of the following freedoms**

- Freedom from inhuman treatment.
- Freedom from slavery.
- Right to freedom from deprivation of property.
- Right to freedom from arbitrary search or entry.
- Protection of right to life etc.

### **7. Outline and explain the Provisions of the Constitution of Zimbabwe**

The following are the major provisions of the constitution of Zimbabwe:

#### **The declaration of Human Rights**

Right to Freedom of Expression, Right to Freedom of Association, Right to Freedom of Conscience, Right to Life.

#### **The Executive**

##### **Composition**

- Headed by the President.
- Include the Vice-Presidents.
- Ministers.
- Cabinet.
- Security Agencies such as: The Police, the Army, CIO, CID, Prison Service, etc.

##### **Functions**

- Executive Authority is vested in the President.
- He upholds the constitution.

- Appoints cabinet Ministers.
- Has prerogative of mercy.
- Has the power to proclaim public emergencies.
- Appoints the judiciary.
- Represents the nation.
- Make laws through decrees.
- He ascends to all Legislation.

### **The Legislation: Composition:**

- There are 152 Members of Parliament, who can be divided as follows:
- 120 Constituent Members who are elected by the people registered in the Common Voter's Role.
- 10 Governors-Appointed by the President.
- 10 chiefs –who are appointed by the chief's Council.
- 12 None Constituent Members- who are Appointed by the President.

### **Functions**

- To make law.
- To approve / disapprove of national budget.
- To monitor line ministries' expenditure.
- To review / amend laws.
- To debate the Presidential address / Speech.
- Sending adhoc committees to investigate problem areas e.g. committee on education.

### **The Judiciary: Composition:**

- Community Courts.
- Magistrate Courts.
- High Court.
- Supreme Court.

### **Functions**

- To interpret the law, apply and enforce the law
- Citizenship.
- The functions of the Police Force, Defence Forces, Prison Service and the Public Service.
- The Ombudsman, his Appointment, duties and powers.
- The Electoral Supervisory Commission and the Delimitation Commission.
- Chiefs and the Chiefs Council.
- Public Office of Attorney General and Comptroller and Audit – General. **8. Discuss the various**

### **Freedoms as outlined in the Constitution of Zimbabwe:**

#### **Freedom Of Speech / Expression**

- Everyone to be allowed to express his/her own opinion freely.

#### **Freedom Of Movement**

- Free to move in and around Zimbabwe-not expelled from Zimbabwe.

#### **Freedom Of Conscience**

- Should enjoy Freedom of Conscience – Freedom of Religion, Freedom to think, to worship, believe or not to believe.

#### **Freedom Of Assembly**

- Freedom to meet / gather with people of your choice.



## **Freedom Of Assembly**

- Freedom to associate with any people / political / trade union / origins of one's choice.

### **9. List Five Functions Of Parliament**

- To make law.
- To approve / disapprove of national budget.
- To monitor line ministries' expenditure.
- To review / amend laws.
- To debate the Presidential address / speech.
- Sending adhoc committees to investigate problem areas e.g. committee on education.

### **10. Discuss the Law Making Process in Zimbabwe**

#### **Presentation of Proposal to Cabinet**

- This is the time when proposed law is presented to the cabinet. They will consider its constitutionality to the nation and present it to the legal advisor of government who is the Attorney General.
- Legal drafting of the Bill by the Attorney General. This is the Stage when the proposal is drafted in legal terms to a Bill and put in the provision to be addressed.
- Consideration by Cabinet Committee chaired by the Minister of Justice Legal and Parliamentary Affairs. At this Stage, the Draft Bill is considered by the Cabinet to make sure that it does not violate, adversely affect the Executive Functions and indirectly amend the Constitution.
- Gazetting in the Government Gazette and references to the Parliament Legal Committees. At this Stage, the Bill is presented for printing and Gazetting for Public Information. It is then referred to the Parliament Legal Committees, which then thoroughly scrutinise it to ensure that it is not adverse to Constitutional Provisions.

#### **First Reading**

- At this Stage the Bill is read in the House with no question being put. It is read for member's information so that they can prepare it in the House of Parliament.

#### **Second Recording**

- At this Stage the Bill is read and any-adverse reports or questions raised to be considered and amendments are done forthwith.

#### **Committee Stage**

- At this Stage, the Bill is considered by various Committees of Parliament to verify any sections that have an impact on committees put in place such as Public Construction and National Housing Committee, Public Accounts, Education Committee, etc.

#### **Report**

- At this Stage, the Bill is reported back in the House for continuous assessment and subsequent endorsement for it being Constitutional and serving the needs of society.

#### **Third Reading**

- At this Stage, the Bill is read with questions and agreements being put. It is the last reading and all members of the House and movers propose its adoption.

#### **The Senate**

#### **The Presidential Assent and Enrolment of the Act**

- At this Stage, the Bill, upon and agreed to, are adopted and sent to the office of the President for his signature and upon its Publication in the Government Gazette, it becomes Law.

### **11. Explain why elections are important?**

- Provide a mechanism for peaceful and legitimate competition for Political power and Authority.

- Give citizens the opportunity to participate in the Governance and Development of their community or country.
- Make elected leaders and their representatives accountable to the people.
- Give legitimacy to governments.
- Provide peace and stability necessary for the development of a community or country.

### 12. Discuss The Composition And Functions Of The Senators?

#### Introduction

- The Constitution of Zimbabwe Amendment Bill No.17 provides for the constituting of Parliament as a **Bicameral** legislature consisting of the House of Assembly of 150 members and Senate of 66 members.

#### Composition

- Of the 66 members, 5 are elected in each of the 10 provinces [50].
- Plus the President and Deputy President of the Council of Chiefs.
- 8 Chiefs elected by the College of Chiefs Council to represent the 8 non-metropolitan provinces.
- Remaining 6 are Appointed by the President and these represent special interest groups.

#### Functions And Roles Of The Senate

- The Upper House (Senate) has a broader mandate to utilize the Senator's experience to ensure that any laws that are passed are in the ultimate national interest.
- The Senate is the custodian of certain national values and principles that may have been overlooked, forgotten, or unknown to the members of the lower House.
- The Senate is a safeguard for prudence and an assurance that all interests, including those that are not fully represented in the Lower House, are represented in the legislative process.
- The Senate provides checks and balances, which help prevent the passage of ill-conceived legislation.
- It is a safeguard against hastily authored legislation that may not be in the national interest.

### 13. Describe The Functions Of The Following In Parliament

#### Chief Whip

- Is member of a Party whose responsibility is to carry out the functions of a whip on behalf of the party
- Responsible for the organisation of the party in the House, ensuring the maximum practicable attendance of the members of the party and maintain party discipline
- Promoting support for the party business in the House and determining how the party should vote to particular proposal.
- Maintaining a quorum of supporters for the business the party is interested in how to behave towards the business of Parliament
- Call for party caucus meetings on Parliamentary business that require / needs party consultations and party whipping of the members

#### Speaker

- Presiding officer of parliament
- Runs all parliamentary proceedings
- Maintains order
- Interprets and applies the Standing Orders
- Upholds the rights and privileges of members and the House

#### Leader of the House

- Arranges the business of the House

- Protects and to some extent defines the position of the government in the House
- Helps determine the scope and content of the legislative programme for the session as well as the businesses of the week
- Moving of the motion for the adjournment of the House
- Responsible for moving formal motions such as motions of condolences, paying tribute.

### **Sergeant-At -Arms**

- Records attendances of members
- Responsibility for security
- Escort suspended members
- House keeping duties
- Carries the mace

Leads the speakers processions

## **INTERNATIONAL AND REGIONAL RELATIONS**

**Quincy rights defined IR** as "relations between groups of major importance in the like of the world at any period of history, in particular those of territorially organised nation States." **Raymond Plating** " defines IR as the studies of the distribution of power on Global scale and the interplay between and among power centres"

### **The essence of IR**

The core and essence of IR is the interaction of nation States. Although the primary focus of IR is the actions. Although the primary focus of IR is the actions and interactions of government, the study of IR also encompasses the multiplicity of factors influencing intergovernmental interaction. Such factors are generally of two kinds:

- Those related to the characteristics of the governments, including their relationships with people they govern and
- Those related to the context or international environment within which interaction among national government occurs. To the extent that they affect interaction among governments, technological, economic, legal, social and cultural relations are part of the study of the IR. Broadly conceived IR includes all types of transactions between governments and between peoples, from the sending of letters to a recipient in another country to the exchange of gunfire between the military forces of two countries.

**Nation:** - the people living within a country with the same political interests, for example in Zimbabwe, the land issue since it can be traced back from the first Chimurenga in 1896 up to the present day events.

**Country:** - the physical geographical territory in which a specific people live in.

**State:** - the permanent power or authority which is sovereign and which is represented by the arms of the State such as the executive, the parliament and the judiciary.

**Government:** - the arm of the State, which is tasked with the ruling or exercising the executive powers of the State that is representing the nation at the international forum, defending and keeping law and order in the nation; implementing political, economic and social policy of the ruling party. The government is formed by the winner at general elections and therefore comes and goes.

### **The practice of international relations**

Society-people within a nation are a society or societies of people. To become a nation therefore should have similar political interests, however, the norms and behavioural patterns within that should determine the distribution of resources and hence the development of classes. Classes in turn bring inequalities, however in international relations, instead of people forming the society or community we have members of the international society. Again within this international society there is also an unequal distribution of resources.

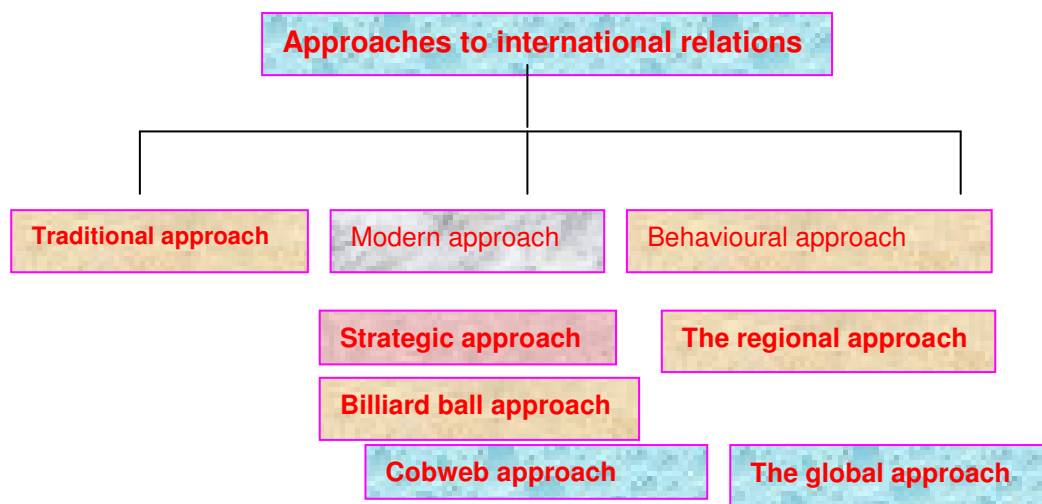
Classical approach

Idealist approach

Rational approach

## International society

Is a recent development in the world's history, which comes into existence in the 16<sup>th</sup> century to resolve conflicts. It came up with principles to govern different nations, which was done thorough conventions or international agreements.



## The classical approach

The proponents of this approach are to large extent social contract theorists. Thomas Hobbes sees a State as arising out of the need to escape from a State of nature, where there is anarchy and life is insecure, short, nasty and brutal. A State of nature presupposes the non-existence of society and therefore the non-existence of the law. In such a lawless States everyone does as he pleases and those with more clout (more power) survive. In others words the law of the jungle" might is right" and survival of the fittest rules supreme. In another sense, this approach is also Evolutionists or Darwinian.

## Idealist approach

These ideas are centred on the existence of the law. This approach involves nations becoming members of specific treaties such as the League of Nations, which was established in 1918, was meant to stop further wars. Woodrow Wilson of USA proposed this. This meant that nation members to the league were going to be bound together by laws, however, USA refused to join the league in spite of championing it. The League of Nations failed to bring peace as evidenced by the war fought in 1927 between Germany and Italy and the Second World War in 1945. Idealism therefore sought to affect the thinking of Global society. This idea is part of idealism.

### **Rational approach (realist approach)**

Between the Second World War and First World War the thinking on international relations shifted from idealism to rational approach. This simply means that people started to look at the practicability of international relations. Explaining the behaviour of various States did this. The behaviouralist approach incorporates all social sciences techniques and concludes that there is danger to peaceful co-existence. Co-existence may result in unilateral law due to misinformation. The classical example is the recent Iraq War, which was fuelled by USA and Great Britain by misinforming the whole world that Iraq had weapons of Mass destruction.

### **The Global approach**

Some behaviouralists believe that the best way forward is a centralised one-world government, with nation States disappearing.

### **Regional approach**

Involves regional politics, for example, SADC. Zimbabwe went to DRC guided by the SADC banner.

**Billiard ball approach:** -Recognises States as individual entities

### **Cobweb model**

John Burton sees international relations as existing within a complex matrix web or matrix in which each State is linked to the other directly or indirectly.

**The strategic model:** - This believes in power politics

## **THE THREE Cs TO INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS**

The three Cs of International Relations are Conflict, Competition and Co-operation.

### **Conflicts**

These are disagreements sparking diplomatic wrangles between nations. A conflict is also synonymous with War. It is a result of serious differences associated with hostilities that may lead to an outbreak of War. Conflict can be caused by competition and by a scramble for scarce resources. It may be a result of differences in trade and political relations. If not resolved, conflict can lead to hostility and Wars, gaps on co-operation, poor relations and may hinder internal, regional and international development. Conflict can be resolved through negotiations, compromising, and external intervention. It can also be resolved through the International Court of Justice through the United Nations intervention (ICJ).

**Competition** Involves rivalry, struggling and competing for supremacy and resources. Nation States could compete in trade and international sports, in technological development, in space exploration and in agriculture, etc. Has led to allegiances, regional blocs and the development of trade routes. Can lead to development and attainment of targets if managed well. Can also develop into conflict and cause poor relations if not managed properly

**Co-operation** Involves collective efforts nations put to the development of States. A concept of practice used by the principle of interdependence of nations. Working together to ensure development and to promote peace and security. Co-operation can also be used to solve problems that know no boundaries e.g. AIDS, Ebola, Sars and Malaria. The need to co-operate to resolve problems have led to the formation of regional and international organisations such as UN, AU, SADC, and NATO etc. Nations come together to deal with various challenges and problems that mankind face. Positive effects of co-operation include bringing development to the participants. Can promote peace and stability.

## The Global Power Balance

Is an issue that emanated from the military supremacy attained by countries, however, after the first and second Wars, the world was split into two blocks with the former USSR leading the War Saw Pact group (the communists as referred to by the West) and USA leading NATO or the Western Block. However, in the late 80s the former USSR collapsed following the introduction of the Glasnost Policy by Mikhail Gorbachev. Also the collapse was a result of the un sustainability of the arms race by former USSR. After the collapse the world became a Uni-polar

## Diplomacy

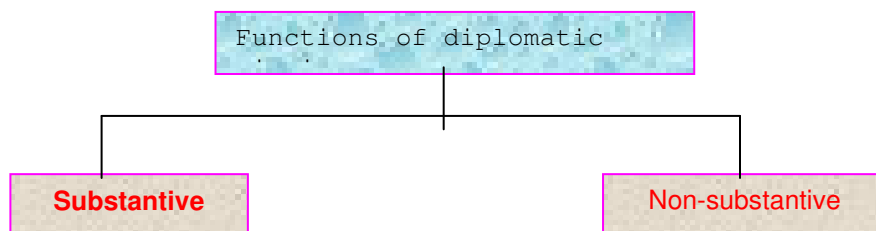
Can be defined as the application of intelligence and tact to the conduct of official relations between governments of independent States. Formal contact between Nations in the Global Community takes place through the medium of diplomacy and the interaction of diplomats. Diplomats are emissaries or representatives of their governments in other countries and are the direct contact between different governments. The Ministers of foreign affairs in all States have the responsibility for the development of diplomats and carrying out of the foreign policy of each respective country.

## The Zimbabwe's Foreign Policy

Zimbabwean's original foreign policy has been that of non-aligned that is of not taking sides between the competing superpowers of the Warsaw Pact under the leadership or guidance of the former USSR and the West (NATO) under the guidance of USA. Of late the Zimbabwean Government has adopted a look East Policy as a result of illegal sanctions put in place by the West and its North American allies who are opposed to Zimbabwean Government Policy of empowering its people.

## Objectives

- To formulate policies that promote the preservation of natural sovereignty
- To be an equal partner in the regional / international affairs especially in the maintenance of peace and stability
- To purse and promote Pan-Africanism
- To protect the Zimbabwean national and self-interest and promote its prestige and reputation
- To determine the most suitable regional and international economic relations
- To promote friendly relations with other countries.



## Non-substantive duties

These include attending to ceremonial functions of the host country, cocktail parties, luncheons, parades, honour giving ceremonies, registration of births, deaths and marriages of citizens from their country residing in the host State and validating and replacing passports.

## Substantive routine duties

The work relates mostly to reporting and intelligence gathering although this is not an official or a declared function of diplomats, however, the other functions include reporting on political, social and economic issues. For military cases specialised diplomats called "attaches" may be appointed.

**The IMF and World Bank (Breton wood's Institutions):** - these are the institutions that lend money to developing countries at very high interests rates. The major contributors are the USA and UK. Therefore, most of their policies favour those of the major financiers. They usually set conditions for any one country interested in receiving money from the higher lending institutions. Some of the conditions include: the devaluation of the local currency, trade liberalisation / removal of tariffs, privatisation of government owned enterprises e.g. NRZ, CSC, ZISCO, etc., reduce expenditure on social services e.g. education, health, reduce budget deficit, etc, raise interest rates to their natural (market) level, remove government subsidies on goods and services, remove minimum wages and allow market forces to determine wages.

### **Zimbabwe's Intervention In Mozambique**

Soon after attaining independence in Zimbabwe, Mozambique was facing a barrage of attack from Mozambique National Resistance Army (MNR) under Alfonso Dhlakama. This was a rebel group that was formed by the Ian Smith regime in conjunction with the Boers in the Republic of South Africa to destabilise both Zimbabwe and Mozambique. This rebel group was trained and armed at a Military base near Marymount Teachers' college in Zimbabwe. Young as she was in terms of being independent, Zimbabwe found herself in Mozambique fighting along side the Samora Machel Government against the MNR) due the following reasons: this was in response to the request by the Government of Mozambique, which was in a State of a Civil War, long-standing friendship between ZANU (PF) and the Frelimo Government, to help Mozambique maintain its **integrity** and **sovereignty**, restore peace in Mozambique and the region, protect Mozambique from the destructive and destabilising Activities of the **RENAMO** or the **MNR**, Protect railway lines, which Zimbabwe used to export her products through Port of Biera and Maputo., to prevent RENAMO Activities spilling into the Eastern Zimbabwe.

### **Zimbabwe's Intervention in DRC**

This was a complex War in the Great Lakes region as it involved various nations, such as Uganda, Rwanda, Angola, Namibia and Zimbabwe. DRC was under siege from the Rwandan and Ugandan armies who were fighting the Government under Laurent Kabila who had succeeded in overthrowing the government of Mobutu Seseseko. DRC is a SADC member and by the time the War broke out R. G. Mugabe was the leader of the security organ in SADC. Therefore the following reasons led Zimbabwe and the allied forces to intervene in the DRC: it was in response to an appeal by the DRC government led by Laurent Kabila, together with Angola and Namibia to drive off Rwandan and Ugandan forces which were attacking the D. R. Congo, to protect the **integrity** and **sovereignty** of the D. R. Congo, to prevent the division of the DRC into **three** or more States, to help restore **peace** in the DRC – since she had not known peace for decades, to show and **express solidarity** with the DRC in line with SADC principles and objectives.

### **International Capital and Imperialism**

#### **Hunter-gatherer / Communal stage**

Between 400BC up to 1500BC, this was the mode of production, however, during this mode of production, it was dominated by the non-existence of classes (lawless society). Therefore, the class contradictions and antagonisms were non-existent as this period was dominated by the survival of the fittest. Their political economy was dominated by free for all economic activities as people specialised in hunting and gathering (no ownership).

#### **Feudalism/ Slave Society**

This mode of production existed between 500A.D and 700A.D. Aristocracy/ rulers, soldiers, slaves; serfs (half slaves and half worker) dominated the class structure. The presence of these classes meant the existence of class contradictions. For example contradictions emanating from slave labour leading to rebellion against the elite, slaves rebelling against the their leaders. The political economy that existed at this time was the elite or aristocracy owned the means of production, for example, there was the extraction of the surplus through the exploitation of free labour.

#### **Mercantile capital (1700 to 1800)**

The following classes existed during this mode of production; aristocracy (elite), merchants, craftsman / industrialists, labourers/workers. The antagonism or the contractions existed between merchants and landlords or it emanated from the formation of joint stock companies, which led to Globalisation of trade, slaves and colonisation for example, the BSAC under Rhodes.

## Competitive Capital 1800-1900

The following classes existed in this mode of production, industrialists, and workers and peasants (communal farmers). The contradictions existed between industrialists, bankers, exploiting workers and merchants' exploitation industrialist. The political economy was free trade based on international division of labour, which involved exploitation of workers, by the industry, monopoly of machines, money and land.

## Monopoly Capital 1900-1945.

In this mode of production, the following classes existed e.g., bankers, industrialist, workers and peasants. Contradictions existed between workers' labour that was under valued leading to acute concentration of capital. **Political Economy** was the extraction of surplus value through repay for workers needs not for value for labour. (There was monopoly ownership of capital land, money and machines).

## Multilateral / Finance Capital from 1945 to the present

The classes that existed in this mode of production were finance institution, for example, WB (World Bank) IMF- (International Monetary Fund) and borrowers (developing countries). The contradictions emanated from the fact that buyers determined prices (developing nations determining prices for goods produced by developing countries). The political economy that exists involves selling of money (export of money), for IMF sending us money at a higher international rate, money monopoly and ownership of capital by banks.

## International Economic Relations

The Second World War marks the beginning point of the present Global economic arrangement. The idealism of the immediate post world War two periods led to massive government led initiatives to bring the shattered economy of the world back to its feet. By 1979 however this role of government in economic activity was under attack and has to a large extent been abandoned altogether. The social welfare state has become a thing of the past and a new ideology, emphasising the role of the market in determining all-economic activity as well as social and political decisions has been adopted. In current economic thinking cooperation or business have total freedom and collective bargaining and trade unionism and the consumer and citizen in general have found themselves at the receiving end of the new international economic order. This new international economic order had by the middle of the 1990s assumed a new form and characteristic namely Globalisation. The IMF, World Bank and Breton Woods Financial institutions were formed for the specific purpose of preventing future conflicts by dealing or removing those economic and social issues that led and that might lead to a new War. The mandate of this financial institution was to provide lending for reconstruction and for short-term balance of payment support. These institutions after 1979 have increasingly taken over individual government, economic policies and intervene in national policy will beyond the scope of their mandate. The post 1945 period saw a massive realignment of Global Economic relations with Europe being mortgaged to the U.S.A under the Marshall Plan which saw infusion of capital into Europe from the U.S.A and newly created Breton Woods financial institutions. The U.S.A insisted on decolonisation as a condition of giving financial support to Europe and declared the end to empire. Thus the USA gained the empires that Europe lost through decolonisation as it gained unprecedented control of former colonies through new economic relations specifically the supply of manufactured goods and the provision of finance capital debt becomes primary form of survival technique for all former colonies and the supply of new materials from former colonies was accelerated in order to raise money to payoff the debt. By the end of the 1970s the so called debt crisis had developed with a new economic Global structure which split the world into producers of raw materials and importers of finance capital and finished goods and producers of finished goods and exporters of finance capital. This relationship was marked or characterised by a high level injustice in the form of unequal exchange. The former colonies from America, Africa and Asia were selling raw materials with little value added to them at prices set by the buyer that is the developed countries. The latter sell manufactured goods to the developing countries at high profit margins and over and above this drain of resources from the south servicing the loans obtained from the north compounds or increases the flow of resources to the south.

The flow of wealth from the south to the north through debt servicing and unequal exchange is further increased with the insistence on structural adjustments programmes in the south by the so called donor community that is western government and the Breton Woods financial institutions or the north. The catch word on economic structures adjustments programmes forced on the south are similar to the free market economic policies instituted on the domestic economics of the north which result in net gains for the super rich and net loss for the average worker. Average income in the 1980s of the top 10% of American families increased by 16%, the top 5% increased by 23%, the top 1% got 50% the bottom 10% of Americans lost 15% during the same period. The same policies during the same period of time applied to Global policies saw an increase in net flows of income to the north and decrease in income to the south with the result that IMF policies have led to increased poverty in the south. These policies are what can be termed Globalisation and are hinged upon, free trade in goods and services between countries through the removal of trade barriers, free circulation of capital, freedom and protection of investments, reduction of governmental expenditure and government interference



in the economy, Privatisation of Parastatals, these points have become the conditionalities for receiving or disbursement of aid by north.

### Features of Globalisation

**Globalisation** is a process of linking all parts of the globe to each other through the opening up of borders to allow free movement of goods and resources, in short **trade liberalisation** accompanied by closer political ties through the mechanism of the UN. This process is facilitated by modern methods of communications in transport and through cyberspace or the Internet. These features include the following, new forms of transport and information technology are faster and economic, investors can trade stocks on internet, standardisation of products – services and communication / civilisation, competition to produce products that measure up to international standards, imperialism or Global Capital is the major beneficiary of Globalisation in that the exportation of capital supersedes all other forms interaction and this leads to the de-industrialisation of or in the smaller States or those that import capital, cultural domination / disintegration of smaller States by dominant players e.g. the USA, schisms and conflict as in the middle east ,super power unilateralism.

### [AFRICAN UNION] AU

#### Purpose

The main purpose of the AU is to promote unity and solidarity among African States, to co-ordinate and intensify their co-operation, to achieve better life for the people of Africa, to defend the African State's Sovereignty, Territorial integrity and Independence, to eradicate all forms of colonialism from Africa, to respect the principles of **sovereign equality** of all member countries, to encourage peaceful settlements of dispute between member States and not to interfere in domestic affairs of fellow citizens.

#### Structure

The structure of the African Union remains that of the OAU, which disbanded in 2001. Its policy-making body is the annual assembly of Heads of State and Government. The assembly coordinates policy and approves decisions made at the periodic meetings of the Council of Ministers, which consists of the foreign Ministers of member countries. Efforts to resolve disputes are handled by the commission of Mediation, Conciliation, and Arbitration. In 1991 the OAU decided to set up a conflict management division to monitor potential disputes and to try and prevent them erupting into violence; a peace fund was created to finance the division's operations. The OAU had a number of specialised commissions dealing with areas such as Economics, Transport and Communications, and Education as well as a few specialised agencies-including the Pan African News Agency, the Pan African- Postal Union, and the Scientific, Technical, and Research Commission. The organisation while maintaining its political nature became increasingly involved with promoting economic integration and cooperation. These efforts led to the decisions to establish an African Economic Community whose Treaty was signed by African leaders in 1991. After receiving the two-thirds ratification, the Treaty entered into force in April 1994, and in early 2001 African leaders agreed in principle to proposals to set up an African Union similar to that of the European Union. The permanent administrative body of the organisation is the general secretariat. It is headed by the Secretary General, elected for a four-year term and aided by five assistant secretaries in charge of the various departments. The secretariat carries out the resolutions and decisions of the assembly, keeps archives, and conducts the organisation's public relations.

**Composition:** - All independent African Countries belong to the AU.

#### Positive Impact

It established an African Development Bank in 1964, has acted and mediated in several disputes between African States, it has provided forum for debate and meeting place for the continent's heads where they debate issues of mutual concern.

### **Negative Impact of AU**

National interests at times appear to be more important to individual countries than common interests of AU, its non-intervention policy is a hand cap as it can watch helplessly when member countries are ravaged by Civil War, it has failed to take a serious stance against human rights, it has failed to stop conflicts, Africa is poverty stricken, no funds to support or promote policies, problems of economic integration, uneven development among member States which have their roots in colonial period, those with resources and technology dominate the grouping, e.g. Nigeria and SA.

### **SADC**

**SADC** was established in August 1992 and is the successor to the Southern African Development Coordinating Conference (SADCC), which was initially set up in 1980. The former Front line States in Southern Africa and nine members formed this and were as follows: Angola, Botswana, Lesotho, Malawi, Mozambique, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

### **Structure**

The headquarters of SADC will remain in Gaborone. It is governed by a Summit comprising the Head of State and Government of all member States and the Council comprising the Minister from each Member to advise the Summit on matters of Policy and efficient and harmonious functioning and development of SADC.

### **Purpose**

To promote collective self-reliance, the whole region to be able to support itself, in food, fuel, energy goods and services, to promote and defend peace and security, to protect the people and safeguard the development of the region against internal instability, inter-State conflict and external aggression, to promote political co-operation, to promote and defend peace and security, promote and maximise productive employment and utilisation of resources of the region.

### **Composition**

**SADC** now consists of the following members: Angola, Botswana, DRC, Lesotho, Malawi, Mauritius, Mozambique, Namibia, Seychelles, SA, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

### **Positive Impact Of SADC**

Implementing projects covering the duties assigned to each member, rehabilitation of transport systems to Mozambique, that is, part of Beira through active participation of SADC Governments and International Foreign Donors.

### **The Three Major Characteristics Of Finance Capital.**

Domination of weaker States by stronger States or domination of developing countries by the developed countries:

- Developing countries being indebted to the developed countries.
- Exportation of capital.
- Monopolisation of capital.
- Creation of external markets.
- International Division of Labour.

- Determination of prices by developed countries characterised by borrowers who are in most cases developing nations.
- Dumping of access goods in the developing nations.
- Globalisation.
- Control of International Finance Capital of developed countries, e.g. IMF and the World Bank.
- Money class owners, e.g. America and Britain.
- Demise of trade and use of Tariffs and brutal force to extract surplus.

### **DONOR COUNTRIES/ FOREIGN AID**

Foreign Aid is the transfer of concessional resources from one government to another or from a government to aid international aid agency or any NGO, which then transfers those resources to poor nations.

#### **Objectives**

- Goal of promoting development in less developed countries
- Reflecting on the humanitarian values
- Gaining diplomatic recognition
- Establishing military bases
- Obtaining a supportive vote e.g. in the Un
- Maintaining a cordial relationship with a recipient government where other foreign Governments are also providing Aid

#### **Merits**

Assist in the development of the recipient country, help establish cordials relationships, the donor countries obtain supportive vote, helps in the balance of payments, creates employment through relief, advocacy and developmental, brings in new technology and brings relief in times of natural disasters such as drought, earthquakes, diseases, etc.

#### **Demerits**

The donor country may interfere in the political systems of the recipient country, that is, by helping puppets to power for example in Zimbabwe, the Case Of the MDC. It can be aid with strings attached, can lead to further exploitation of the recipient country's resources, the recipient country can develop a dependency syndrome, the recipient country can become a dumping ground for irrelevant and out dated technology, donors may gain political mileage through their donations at the expense of the third world governments and may determine national Sovereignty of recipient countries

### **QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS (IR)**

Classes in society imply the existence of:

- a) Free market commodities
- b) Democracy

- c) **Class Contradictions in the Society**  
d) The study of national science
2. Global power politics dominated by two powers is:  
a) **Bi – polar**  
b) Multi-polar  
c) Bilateral  
d) None of the above
3. The rational approach to international relations emphasises:  
a) The fact that peace and security can be engineered through intergovernmental organisations like the UN  
b) **The relations among States are determined by national self-interest and greed**  
c) The probability of positive outcome determines the decision of State  
d) The fact that the "just War" determines whether conflict exists or does not exist among States
4. Zimbabwe's Sectoral Responsibility In SADC Is:  
a) Inland Fisheries and Agricultural research  
b) Energy and Transport  
c) **Food, Security and Agricultural Research**  
d) Transport and Communication
5. International Relations are associated with:  
a. **Co-operation, Conflict and Competition**  
b. Evaluation, Conflict, and Reading  
c. Explaining and Analysis  
d. Foreign Aid and Globalisation
6. The United Nations was founded in:  
a. 1975  
b. 1943  
c. **1945**  
d. 1920
7. The Balance of Power theory in International Relations relate to:  
a. Maintaining the power balance amongst States  
b. **Global distribution of power**  
c. Ensuring shared anatomy  
d. Neutralisation of power Nations
8. The Breton Wood Institutions facilitate:  
a. **International Capital**  
b. Imperialist capital  
c. Mercantile capital  
d. Capitalism
9. Zimbabwe has intervened militarily in:  
a) The DRC and Somalia  
b) Mozambique, Kosovo and Botswana  
c) Zambia and Angola  
d) **The DRC and Mozambique**
10. The IMF and the World Bank Structural Adjustment Policies have:

- a) Contributed to the industrialisation of Third World Countries
  - b) Contributed to increased poverty and suffering in Third World Countries**
  - c) More Aid flowing to 3<sup>rd</sup> World Countries
  - d) None of the Above
11. Which among the following is not a Modern Approach to the study of International relation?
- a) Classical Approach**
  - b) Cob-web Approach
  - c) Billiard ball Approach
  - d) System/Strategic Approach
12. Which of the following **is not** a legitimate role of a diplomatic mission?
- a) Promote trade between two countries
  - b) Support opposition parties in the host country**
  - c) Encourage Tourism between two countries
  - d) Promote Technological exchange
13. The collapse of the **Soviet –Union** as a World Super Power resulted in:
- a) Multilateral power balance
  - b) Bi-polar power balance
  - c) Uni-polar balance**
  - d) None of the above
14. The "Cold War" was a military stand off between:
- a) Africa and Europe
  - b) China and Japan
  - c) Warsaw Pact countries and Nato countries**
  - d) America and Cuba
15. Which among the following **is not** a characteristic of imperialism in its current phase?
- a) Export of Finance Capital
  - b) Existence of dominance relationship between importers and exporters of capital
  - c) Fair trading practices**
  - d) Unfavourable terms of trade
16. Which among the following is **not** a stage in the development of imperialism/finance capital?
- a) Feudalism
  - b) Mercantile Capital
  - c) Monopoly Capital
  - d) Communism**
17. Idealism as an explanation of international relations was:
- a) A historical analysis of events as they took place
  - b) A Utopian prescription of how nations ought to behave**
  - c) A legal remedy to endemic insecurity
  - d) A Neo-Marxist theory
18. Which of the following is **not** an African Regional Organisation?
- a) ECOWAS
  - b) COMESA
  - c) East African Community
  - d) North Atlantic Free Trade Area**

19. The last and latest phase in the development of imperialism is:
- a) Monopoly Capital
  - b) Feudal Capital
  - c) Competitive Capital
  - d) **Multi-Lateral Capital or finance Capital**
20. Which of the following is **not** a Modern Approach to International Relations?
- a) The Strategic Approach
  - b) The Billiard Ball Approach
  - c) **The Global Approach**
  - d) The Cobweb Approach
21. Which Approach to International Relations has the following Statement; "might is right and survival of the fittest"?
- a) **Classical Approach**
  - b) The Strategic Approach
  - c) The Regional Approach
  - d) The Rational Approach
22. Which Approach to International Relations pre-supposes the non-existence of society, hence non-existence of law?
- a) The Rational Approach
  - b) **The Classical Approach**
  - c) The Regional Approach
  - d) Idealist Approach
23. The Approach that became normative, prescriptive is the:
- a) The Classical Approach
  - b) **The Idealist Approach**
  - c) The Realist Approach
  - d) The Billiard Ball Approach
24. The Approach that led to the formation of the League of Nations in 1918 is the:
- a) **The Idealist Approach**
  - b) The Classical Approach
  - c) The Regional Approach
  - d) The Strategic Approach
25. The Approach that led to the recognition of States as Individual Entities was the:
- a) **The Billiard Ball Approach**
  - b) The Cob-web Model Approach
  - c) The Strategic Approach
  - d) The Behavioural Approach
26. Which International Relations Approaches sees International Relations as existing within **a complex matrix** in which each State is linked to the other directly or indirectly and motion in or between components impact each other:
- 27.
- a) **Cob-web Model**
  - b) Billiard Ball Model
  - c) Rational Model

- d) Strategic Model
27. The Approach that believed and believes in power politics:
- a) **The Strategic Approach**
  - b) The Cob-web Approach
  - c) The Classical Model Approach
  - d) The Behavioural Model Approach
28. The Approach that makes the methodical departure from previous approaches and denounces the strategic approach as Warmongers, immoral and a threat to world peace and security is:
- a) The Realistic Approach.
  - b) **The Behavioural Approach**
  - c) The Idealistic Approach
  - d) The Cobweb Approach
29. Which of the following approaches suggests that the world should be centralised with one-world government and result in nation States disappearing?
- a) **The Global Approach**
  - b) Non-Global Approach
  - c) The Regional Approach
  - d) International Approach
30. After the Second World War the World became:
- a) Uni-polar
  - b) **Bi-polar**
  - c) Centri-polar
  - d) None of the above
31. The War Saw Pact Block countries was led by the:
- a) **Former Soviet Union**
  - b) USA
  - c) German
  - d) Romania
32. The Western Block countries were led by the:
- a) German
  - b) Britain
  - c) **USA**
  - d) France
33. The countries that either belonged to the Western Block or Eastern Block countries are called:
- a) The Global Union
  - b) The AU
  - c) **Non- Aligned Movement**
  - d) Comesa
34. The Cold War era **saw bloody Wars** in the following combination of African countries:
- a) Somalia, Vietnam and Nicaragua
  - b) Mozambique, Angola and Zimbabwe
  - c) **Mozambique, Angola and Somalia**
  - d) Angola, Lesotho and Ghana
35. Which of the Policy introduced by **Michael Gorbachev** led to the collapse of the then whole War Saw Pact Military and Economic Systems?

- a) **Glasnost Policy**  
b) Red Army Policy  
c) Nato policy Act  
d) None of the above
36. Diplomacy can be defined as:  
a) **The application of intelligence and tact to the conduct of official relations between the Governments of independent States**  
b) It involves acquiring diplomas over seas  
c) Refers to privileges and immunities of Diplomats  
d) None of the above
37. The Zimbabwean Foreign Policy Core interests are:  
a) **That the Zimbabweans have inalienable right to land, that is, to own it and to share it equally with other Zimbabweans of all races without discrimination**  
b) To Promote Pan Africanism  
c) To Participate in Peace Keeping Missions  
d) To find or to determine the most suitable economic relations with the developed world.
38. Diplomats in the Host Nation enjoys:  
a) **Diplomatic privileges and immunities**  
b) Attending to political missions  
c) Enjoys supporting opposition parties in the host nations  
d) Enjoys staying in foreign lands and benefits associated with them.
39. Imperialism can be defined as:  
a) The occupation and control of other States by foreigners  
b) **The exploitation of resources in territories occupied by force and other subtle means**  
c) Equitable distribution of resources  
d) None of the above
40. Which of the following mode of production had free for all economy?  
a) Feudalism  
b) Mercantile Capital  
c) **Hunter Gatherer**  
d) Competitive Capital
41. Monopolisation of markets by merchants was the main political economy of:  
a) **Mercantile Capital**  
b) Feudalism  
c) Competitive Capital  
d) Hunter Gatherer
42. Which of the following are the main polices of **Globalisation**:  
a) Free Circulation of Capital  
b) Free Trade in Goods and Services between countries through the removal of Trade Barriers



- c) Privatisation of Parastatals
- d) **All of the above**
43. International law is sourced from the following except:
- a) Treaties and Conventions
- e) The customs of State relations with each other
- c) Jurists and other writers
- (d) **Act of parliament**
44. The latest phase in International Relations where third world countries are expected by developed countries is called.....
- a) Neo –capitalism
- b) **Neo- colonialism**
- c) Colonisation
- d) Capitalism

1. **Discuss The IMF And World Bank (Breton Wood's Institutions) That Advocate For The Uninterrupted Operation Of Market Forces.**

**Conditions**

- Devalue currency.
- Trade Liberalisation / Remove Tariffs.
- Privatised Government owned Enterprises e.g. NRZ, CSC, ZISCO, etc.
- Reduce expenditure on social services e.g. education, health, reduce budget deficit, etc.
- Raise Interest Rates to their natural (market) level.
- Remove Government Subsidies on goods and services.
- Remove Minimum Wages and allow market forces to determine wages.

2. **Discuss the meaning and importance of the three C's of International Relations**

**Introduction**

The three Cs of International Relations are Conflict, Competition and Co-operation.

**Conflict**

- Disagreement sparking diplomatic wrangles between nations.
- Serious differences associated with hostilities that may lead to an outbreak of War.
- Conflict can be caused by competition and by a scramble for scarce resources.
- It may be a result of differences in trade and political relations.
- If not resolved, conflict can lead to hostility and Wars, gaps on co-operation, poor relations and may hinder internal, regional and international development.
- Conflict can be resolved through negotiations, compromising, and external intervention.
- It can also be resolved through the International Court of Justice through the United Nations intervention (ICJ).

**Competition**

- Involves rivalry, struggling and competing for supremacy and resources.
- Competition in trade and international sports, in technological development, in space exploration and in agriculture, etc.
- Has led to allegiances, regional blocs and the development of trade routes.
- Can lead to development and attainment of targets if managed well
- Can also develop into conflict and cause poor relations if not managed properly

**Co-operation**

- Involves collective efforts nations put to the development of States.
- A concept of practice used by the principle of interdependence of nations.
- Working together to ensure development and to promote peace and security.
- Co-operation can also be used to solve problems that know no boundaries e.g. AIDS, Ebola, Sars and Malaria.
- The need to co-operate to resolve problems have led to the formation of regional and international organisations such as UN, AU, SADC, and NATO etc.

### 3. Justify Zimbabwe's Intervention In Mozambique And In The Democratic Republic Of Congo.

#### In Mozambique

- Was in response to the request of the Government of Mozambique, which was in a State of a Civil War.
- Long-standing friendship between ZANU (PF) and the Frelimo Government.
- To help Mozambique maintain its **integrity** and **sovereignty**.
- Restore peace in Mozambique and the region.
- Protect Mozambique from the destructive and destabilising Activities of the **RENAMO** or the **MNR**.
- Protect railway lines, which Zimbabwe used to export her products through Port of Biera and Maputo.
- To prevent RENAMO Activities spilling into the Eastern Zimbabwe.

#### Zimbabwe Intervention in DRC

- In response to an appeal by the DRC government led by Laurent Kabila.
- Together with Angola and Namibia to drive off Rwandan and Ugandan forces which were attacking the D. R. Congo.
- To protect the **integrity** and **sovereignty** of the D. R. Congo.
- To prevent the division of the DRC into **three** or more States.
- To help restore **peace** in the DRC – since she had not known peace for decades.
- To show and **express solidarity** with the DRC in line with SADC principles and objectives.

### 4. Discuss The Major Features Of Globalisation

**Globalisation** is a process of linking all parts of the globe to each other through the opening up of borders to allow free movement of goods and resources, in short **trade liberalisation** accompanied by closer political ties through the mechanism of the UN. This process is facilitated by modern methods of communications in transport and through cyberspace or the Internet.

#### Internet Is Quiet Central In Facilitating Globalisation.

- New forms of transport and information technology are faster and economic.
- Investors can trade stocks on Internet.
- Standardisation of products – services and communication / civilisation.
- Competition to produce products that measure up to international standards.
- Imperialism or Global capital is the major beneficiary of Globalisation in that the exportation of capital supersedes all other forms interaction and this leads to the de-industrialisation of or in the smaller States or those that import capital.
- Cultural domination / disintegration of smaller States by dominant players e.g. the USA.
- Schisms and conflict as in the Middle East.
- Super power unilateralism.

### 5. Explain the Doctrine of Interdependence

No one country is endowed with all resources. Consequently all countries rely on each other through international trade.

## 6. Discuss the purpose, structure and composition of the AU and SADC Organisation

### [African Union] AU

#### Purpose

- To Promote unity and solidarity among African States.
- To co-ordinate and intensify their co-operation.
- To achieve better life for the people of Africa.
- To defend the African State's Sovereignty, Territorial integrity and Independence.
- To eradicate all forms of colonialism from Africa.
- To respect the principles of **sovereign equality** of all member countries.
- To encourage peaceful settlements of dispute between member States.
- Not to interfere in domestic affairs of fellow citizens.

#### Structure

The structure of the African Union remains that of the OAU, which disbanded in 2001. Its policy-making body, is the annual assembly of Heads of State and Government. The assembly coordinates policy and approves decisions made at the periodic meetings of the Council of Ministers, which consists of the foreign Ministers of member countries. Efforts to resolve disputes are handled by the commission of Mediation, Conciliation, and Arbitration. In 1991 the OAU decided to set up a conflict management division to monitor potential disputes and to try and prevent them erupting into violence; a peace fund was created to finance the division's operations. The OAU had a number of specialised commissions dealing with areas such as Economics, Transport and Communications, and Education as well as a few specialised agencies-including the Pan African News Agency, the pan African- Postal Union, and the Scientific, Technical, and Research Commission. The organisation while maintaining its political nature became increasingly involved with promoting economic integration and cooperation. These efforts led to the decisions to establish an African Economic Community whose Treaty was signed by African leaders in 1991. After receiving the two-thirds ratification, the Treaty entered into force in April 1994, and in early 2001 African leaders agreed in principle to proposals to set up an African Union similar to that of the European Union.

The permanent administrative body of the organisation is the general secretariat. It is headed by the Secretary General, elected for a four-year term and aided by five assistant secretaries in charge of the various departments. The secretariat carries out the resolutions and decisions of the assembly, keeps archives, and conducts the organisation's public relations.

#### Composition

- All independent African Countries belong to the AU.

**SADC** was established in August 1992 and is the successor to the Southern African Development Coordinating Conference (SADCC), which was initially set up in 1980. The former Front line States in Southern Africa and nine members formed this and were as follows: Angola, Botswana, Lesotho, Malawi, Mozambique, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

**Structure** The headquarters of SADC will remain in Gaborone. It is governed by a Summit comprising the Head of State and Government of all member States and the Council comprising the Minister from each Member to advise the Summit on matters of Policy and efficient and harmonious functioning and development of SADC.

#### Purpose

- To promote collective self-reliance, the whole region to be able to support itself, in food, fuel, energy goods and services.
- To promote and defend peace and security.

- To protect the people and safeguard the development of the region against internal instability, inter-State conflict and external aggression.
- To promote political co-operation.
- Promote and defend peace and security.
- Promote and maximise productive employment and utilisation of resources of the region.

### **Composition**

- **SADC** now consists of the following members: Angola, Botswana, DRC, Lesotho, Malawi, Mauritius, Mozambique, Namibia, Seychelles, SA, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

### **7. Critically Assess Their Activities As Well As Their Impact In The Region**

#### **Positive Impact**

- It established an African Development Bank in 1964.
- Has Acted and mediated in several disputes between African States.
- It has provided forum for debate and meeting place for the continent's Heads where they debate issues of mutual concern.

#### **Negative Impact Of AU**

- National Interests at times appear to be more important to individual countries than common interests of AU.
- Its non- intervention policy is a hand cap as it can watch helplessly when member countries are ravaged by civil War.
- It has failed to take a serious stance against human rights.
- It has failed to stop conflicts.
- Africa is poverty stricken, no funds to support or promote policies.
- Problems of economic integration.
- Uneven development among member States, which have their roots in colonial period.
- Those with resources and technology dominate the grouping, e.g. Nigeria and SA.
- SADC members do not yet have Free Trade among themselves so tariffs are still charged on goods moving between countries in the region.

#### **Positive Impact Of SADC**

- Implementing projects covering the duties assigned to each member.
- Rehabilitation of transport systems to Mozambique, that is, part of Beira through Active participation of SADC Governments. And International Foreign Donors.

### **8. Identify The Various Stages Through Which International Capital Has Developed?**

- Hunter-gatherer State of Nature Mode of Production.
- Feudal Mode of production.
- Mercantile.
- Competitive.
- Monopoly.
- Multilateral/Finance Capital Mode of Production.

### **9. "The Highest Stage Of Imperialism Is Finance Capital" Comment On The Three Major Characteristics Of Finance Capital?**

Domination of weaker States by stronger States or domination of developing countries by the developed countries:

- Developing countries being indebted to the developed countries.
- Exportation of capital.
- Monopolisation of capital.
- Creation of external markets.
- International Division of Labour.
- Determination of prices by developed countries characterised by borrowers who are in most cases developing nations.
- Dumping of excess goods in the developing nations.
- Globalisation.
- Control of International Finance Capital of developed countries, e.g. IMF and the World Bank.
- Money class owners, e.g. America and Britain.
- Demise of trade and use of Tariffs and brutal force to extract surplus.

### 10. Fully Explain The Objectives Of The Zimbabwe's Foreign Policy?

- Zimbabwe's original foreign policy has been that of non-aligned that is of not taking sides between the competing superpowers of the Warsaw Pact under the leadership or guidance of the former USSR and the West (NATO) under the guidance of USA. Of late the Zimbabwean Government has adopted a Look East Policy as a result of illegal sanctions put in place by the West and its North American allies who are opposed to Zimbabwean government policy of empowering its people.

#### Objectives

- To formulate policies that promote the preservation of national sovereignty
- To be an equal partner in the regional / international affairs especially in the maintenance of peace and stability
- To pursue and promote Pan-Africanism
- To protect the Zimbabwean national and self-interest and promote its prestige and reputation
- To determine the most suitable regional and international economic relations
- To promote friendly relations with other countries

### 11. Discuss The Objectives Of Donor Countries In Giving Aid To Developing Countries And The Merits And Demerits Of Foreign Aid To Developing Countries.

- Foreign Aid is the transfer of concessional resources from one government to another or from a government to an international aid agency or any NGO, which then transfers those resources to poor nations.

#### Objectives

- Goal of promoting development in less developed countries
- Reflecting on the humanitarian values
- Gaining diplomatic recognition
- Establishing military bases
- Obtaining a supportive vote e.g. in the UN
- Maintaining a cordial relationship with a recipient government where other foreign Governments are also providing Aid

#### Merits

- Assist in the development of the recipient country
- Help establish cordial relationships

- The donor countries obtain s supportive vote
- Helps in the balance of payments
- Creates employment through relief, advocacy and developmental
- Brings in new technology
- Brings relief in times of natural disasters such as drought, earthquakes, diseases, etc.

### **Demerits**

- The donor country may interfere in the political systems of the recipient country, that is, by helping puppets to power for example in Zimbabwe, the Case Of the MDC.
- It can be aid with strings attached
- Can lead to further exploitation of the recipient country's resources.
- The recipient country can develop a dependency syndrome
- The recipient country can become a dumping ground for irrelevant and out dated technology
- Donors may gain political mileage through their donations at the expense of the third world governments
- May determine national Sovereignty of recipient countries